

FORD **MUSTANG** Owner's Manual



March 2018
Second Printing



JR3J 19A321 ZAB



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2018

All rights reserved.

Part Number: JR3J 19A321 ZAB 201709 20180123163934

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual	5
Symbols Glossary	5
Data Recording	7
Replacement Parts Recommendation	8
Mobile Communications Equipment	9

At a Glance

Instrument Panel Overview	10

Child Safety

Child Restraints	12
Selecting a Child Restraint System	13
Installing Child Restraints	13
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations	14
Protecting Larger Children	16
Checking Seatbelt Fit	16

Seatbelts

Principle of Operation	17
Fastening the Seatbelts	18
Seatbelt Reminder	19

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation	20
Driver Airbag	20
Passenger Airbag	21
Front Passenger Sensing System	21
Side Airbags	24
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags	24
Side Curtain Airbags - Coupe	25
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator	25

Pedestrian Protection

Principle of Operation	27

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies	29
Remote Control	29
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	32

MyKey™

Principle of Operation	33
Creating a MyKey	34
Clearing All MyKeys	35
Checking MyKey System Status	36
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems	37
MyKey Troubleshooting	37

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking	38
Keyless Entry	41

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	43
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery	44
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor	46
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm	47

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	48
Audio Control	48
Voice Control	49
Cruise Control	49
Information Display Control	49

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers	51
Autowipers	51
Windshield Washers	52

Table of Contents

Lighting

General Information	53
Lighting Control	53
Autolamps	54
Instrument Lighting Dimmer	54
Headlamp Exit Delay	55
Daytime Running Lamps	55
Automatic High Beam Control	55
Front Fog Lamps	56
Rear Fog Lamps	56
Headlamp Leveling	57
Direction Indicators	57
Interior Lamps	57
Ambient Lighting	57

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows	58
Global Opening	58
Exterior Mirrors	59
Interior Mirror	60
Sun Visors	60

Instrument Cluster

Gauges	61
Warning Lamps and Indicators	63
Audible Warnings and Indicators	65

Information Displays

General Information	66
Information Messages	69

Climate Control

Air Vents	79
Automatic Climate Control	79
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate	81
Heated Windows and Mirrors	82
Cabin Air Filter	82

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position	83
Head Restraints	84
Manual Seats	85
Power Seats	85
Memory Function	86
Rear Seats	87
Climate Controlled Seats	88

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points	90

Storage Compartments

Cup Holders	92
Center Console	92
Glasses Holder	92

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information	93
Keyless Starting	93
Steering Wheel Lock	94
Starting a Gasoline Engine	94

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions	97
Fuel Quality	97
Fuel Filler Funnel Location	98
Running Out of Fuel	98
Refueling	99

Engine Emission Control

Catalytic Converter	103

Transmission

Manual Transmission	104
Automatic Transmission	105

Table of Contents

Rear Axle

Limited Slip Differential	110

Brakes

General Information	111
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes	111
Parking Brake	112
Hill Start Assist	112

Traction Control

Principle of Operation	114
Using Traction Control	114

Stability Control

Principle of Operation	115
Using Stability Control	116

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation	118
Rear Parking Aid	118
Rear View Camera	119

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation	123
Using Adaptive Cruise Control	123

Driving Aids

Driver Alert	129
Lane Keeping System	130
Steering	134
Pre-Collision Assist	135
Drive Control	139

Load Carrying

General Information	141

Towing

Towing a Trailer	142

Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels	142

Convertible Top

Opening the Convertible Top	143
Closing the Convertible Top	144

Driving Hints

Breaking-In	146
Reduced Engine Performance	146
Economical Driving	146
Cold Weather Precautions	147
Driving Through Water	147
Floor Mats	147

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers	149
First Aid Kit	149
Warning Triangle	149
Fuel Shutoff	149
Jump Starting the Vehicle	149
Post-Crash Alert System	152
Transporting the Vehicle	152
Towing Points	152

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart	154
Changing a Fuse	162

Maintenance

General Information	164
Opening and Closing the Hood	164
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™	165
Under Hood Overview - 5.0L	166
Engine Oil Dipstick	167
Engine Oil Check	167
Oil Change Indicator Reset	167
Engine Coolant Check	168
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check	172

Table of Contents

Brake Fluid Check	172
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission	173
Washer Fluid Check	173
Fuel Filter	173
Changing the 12V Battery	173
Checking the Wiper Blades	175
Changing the Wiper Blades	175
Adjusting the Headlamps	176
Changing a Bulb	177
Bulb Specification Chart	178
Changing the Engine Air Filter	180

Track Use

Track Use	181

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	182
Cleaning the Interior	183
Cleaning Leather Seats	184
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	185
Cleaning the Wheels	185
Cleaning the Convertible Top	185
Body Styling Kits	186

Wheels and Tires

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	187
Tire Care	193
Using Summer Tires	194
Using Snow Chains	194
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	195
Changing a Road Wheel	199
Driving at High Speed	204
Technical Specifications	205

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Convertible	206
Vehicle Dimensions - Coupe	207
Vehicle Identification Plate	208

Vehicle Identification Number	208

Audio System

General Information	210
Audio Unit	211
Digital Radio	212
USB Port	213

SYNC™ 3

General Information	214
Home Screen	225
Using Voice Recognition	227
Entertainment	233
Climate	238
Phone	242
Navigation	247
Apps	253
Settings	255
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting	266

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	280
End User License Agreement	282
Type Approvals	308

Introduction

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

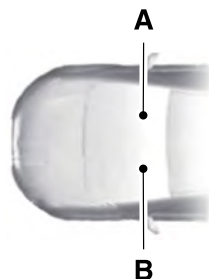
Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Air conditioning system



Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based

Introduction



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt



Flammable



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard flashers



Heated rear window



Windshield defrosting system



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level

Introduction



Note operating instructions



Horn control



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Service engine soon



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wiping system



Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

Introduction

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

Note: *Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.*

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Introduction

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

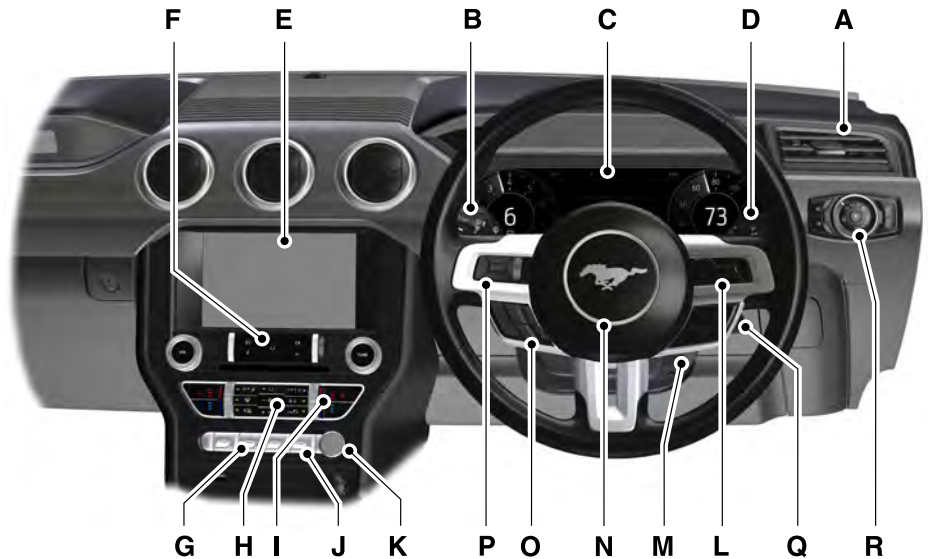


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

At a Glance

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



E250046

- A Air vents.
- B Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 51).
- C Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 61).
- D Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 57).
- E Information and entertainment display. See **General Information** (page 214).
- F Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 210).
- G Drive control switches. See **Drive Control** (page 139).
- H Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 79).
- I Climate controlled seats. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 88).
- J Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 149).
- K Keyless start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 93).
- L Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 66).
- M Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 48).
- N Horn.

At a Glance

- O Cruise control switches. See **Cruise Control** (page 123).
- P Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 48).
- Q Luggage compartment release button. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).
- R Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 53).

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS



Children must always be properly restrained.



This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. Ford strongly recommends that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.

WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

WARNINGS



Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather, they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



Read and follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.



Do not alter or modify child restraints in any way.



Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle.



On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.



E212161

Child Safety

SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.



Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, raise the head restraint (where fitted) and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This will prevent the tether strap from falling off the outboard edge of the seating positions.

Child Safety



E166723

Note: Side curtain air bags (where fitted) will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a collision or sudden stop and injure someone.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

Upper (top tether) anchorages

WARNING



Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

There are two child restraint top tether anchorages, one for each rear seating position.

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later.

Coupe



E217152



E217153

Note: Arrow points to front of vehicle.

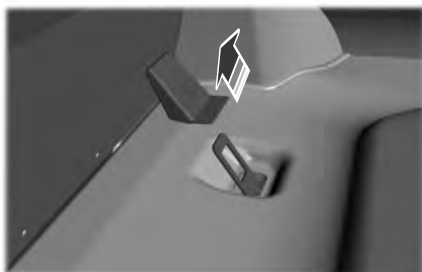
If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip as shown, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

Child Safety

Convertible



E217154



E217155

Note: Arrow points to front of vehicle.

Note: For easier access, attach the tether with the convertible top up.

WARNINGS

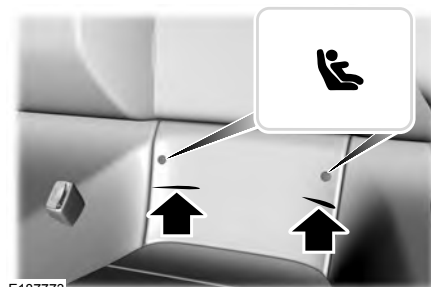
-  Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.
-  Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.
-  Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.
-  Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.
-  Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

ISOFIX LOWER ANCHORAGES

WARNING

-  The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX lower anchorages located in the lower backrest of the rear seats, as shown in the following picture.



E187773

Child Safety

PROTECTING LARGER CHILDREN

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

Typical Booster Seat



E70710

WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.
-  Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.

WARNINGS

-  Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.
-  Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

Seatbelts

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.



Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.



Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt properly, can it hold you in position to achieve its optimum effect.

See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 83).

WARNINGS



Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.



Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.



Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

WARNINGS



Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.



No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.



Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

The driver and front passenger seatbelt systems are fitted with a seatbelt pretensioner. Seatbelt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seatbelt pretensioners will deploy.

Status after a collision

WARNINGS



Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.



If a seatbelt pretensioner has been deployed, the seatbelt must be renewed.

Seatbelts

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag is deployed.

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

WARNINGS



Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt correctly if you do not hear a click.



Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and are not outside your vehicle when closing the door.

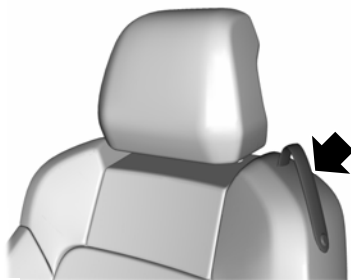
A web guide is included on the outboard side of the front seats. Depending on occupant size and seating position, you may need to route the belt through the guide for a proper fit. If the seatbelt does not route across the middle of the shoulder, route the belt through the web guide.

Convertible



E175860

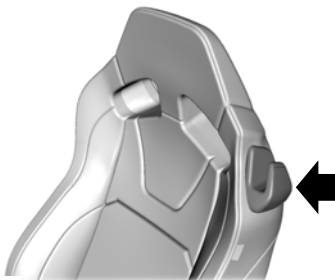
Coupe



E175859

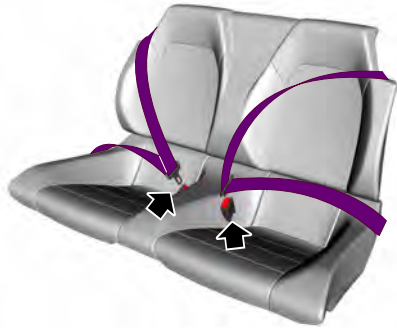
Note: Unclip the lower end of the web guide from the seatback. Place the seatbelt under the web guide and reattach it to the seatback.

Recaro (If Equipped)



E175163

Seatbelts



E204921

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

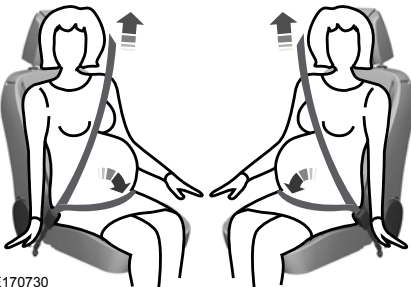
Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING



Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



E170730

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the centre of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

WARNING



The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate when a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt both the audible and visual warnings will switch off automatically after approximately five minutes.

Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off

See an authorized dealer.

Supplementary Restraints System

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

 Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the airbag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.

 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.

 Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

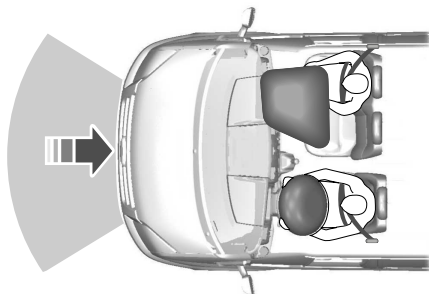
 Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 Use accessory seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

Note: You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

Note: Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

DRIVER AIRBAG

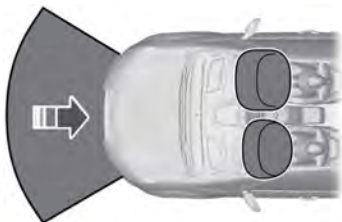


E268726

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

Supplementary Restraints System

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E151127

The passenger airbag will deploy during significant frontal or near-frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the front passenger airbag will not deploy.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNING

 NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



E212161

WARNINGS

-  Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, the rear seats are the safest place for children.
-  Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.
-  Do not stow objects in the seatback map pocket or hang objects off a seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of serious injury.
-  Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Supplementary Restraints System

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



E253573

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either on (enabled) or off (disabled).

The indicator lamp is on the overhead console.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator lamps illuminate for a short period of time when you first switch the ignition on to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp and stays lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If you install the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, then switch the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp and remains illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains lit even after this, advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

Supplementary Restraints System

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seatback.
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 25).

If the airbag readiness light is lit, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat, or cargo interfering with the seat.

If there are lodged objects, or cargo is interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Switch the vehicle off.
- Driver and adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.

Supplementary Restraints System

- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING



Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

Coupe



E152533

Convertible



E174777

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

DRIVER AND PASSENGER KNEE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS



To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

A driver knee airbag is located under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is located within or under the glove box door. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant

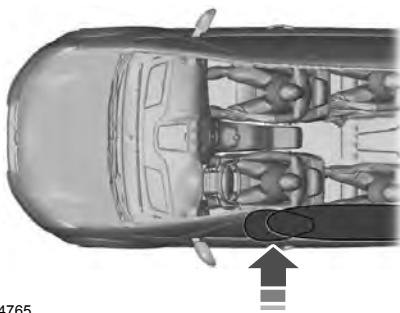
Supplementary Restraints System

conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 25).

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS - COUPE



E204765

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbags will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The side curtain airbags may deploy in significant frontal angled crashes.

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including hood, frame, bumper system, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system and deployable hood system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash, occupant and pedestrian sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags, side curtain airbags and deployable hood system (for pedestrian protection). Based on the type of crash (frontal impact, side impact, rollover or pedestrian impact), the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash, occupant and pedestrian sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbags and deployable hood system is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

Supplementary Restraints System

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system and deployable hood system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The seatbelt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash, or the deployable hood system did not activate in a pedestrian crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration).
- The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. The design of the side curtain airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. Side airbags and the side curtain airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or rollover likelihood.
- The deployable hood system is designed to activate in a pedestrian impact between the speeds of about 20 km/h and 50 km/h. Events similar to a pedestrian impact may deploy the hood system. See **Pedestrian Protection** (page 27).

Pedestrian Protection

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

 Do not drive your vehicle if the hood has been deployed.

 Do not place your hand or objects or mount equipment on or near the hood lifters that may come into contact with a deploying hood lifter. Failure to follow these instructions may cause serious injury during a deployment.

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the deployable hood system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 If the deployable hood system activates, it will not function again. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the deployable hood system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has an enhanced pedestrian protection system in the event of a pedestrian impact. The bumper includes energy absorbing material in its construction, and sensors that can detect a pedestrian impact and trigger a deployable hood system.

Deployable Hood System



E94698

The system releases the hood hinges and raises the rear edge of the hood by about 100 mm. This increases the gap between the hood and the components within the engine compartment to provide additional cushioning in case the pedestrian makes contact with the hood.

The deployable hood system consists of:

- Hood.
- Hood hinges.
- Hood lifters located near the hood hinges.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 25).
- Deployable hood system caution labels placed under the hood near the hood lifters to show their location for service and emergency personnel.

Pedestrian Protection



E199514

These labels show the location of the hood lifters for service and emergency personnel.

The deployable hood system is active only when you switch the ignition on and drive the vehicle between the speeds of about 20 km/h and 50 km/h.

After Deployment

After an impact that has activated the deployable hood system, the hood rises and remains permanently attached to the vehicle, by the hood hinges and latch. Do not drive the vehicle when the hood has been deployed. If the deployable hood system has been activated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, and transport the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.



If the readiness lamp lights and stays on, transport the vehicle to the nearest qualified technician.

You can open the hood using the hood latch after the deployable hood has been triggered. Make sure the hood is securely closed and latched before transporting the vehicle to the nearest qualified technician.

Deployable Hood Monitoring System

The deployable hood system does not require routine maintenance.



If a fault is detected in the system, the monitoring system turns on the readiness indicator in the instrument cluster.

If the readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to a qualified technician.

If the deployable hood system activates, we recommend that these parts be replaced:

- Crash sensors.
- The hood.
- Hood hinges.
- Hood lifters.

A qualified technician should inspect these parts and replace if necessary:

- Bumper and energy absorbing material.

Hood Lifter Disposal

Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Qualified personnel must dispose of the hood lifters.

Keys and Remote Controls

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL

Passive Key

Note: *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the passive key is inside your vehicle.*



E258628

The passive key operates the power locks and remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

Removable Key Blade

The passive key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls



E258629

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



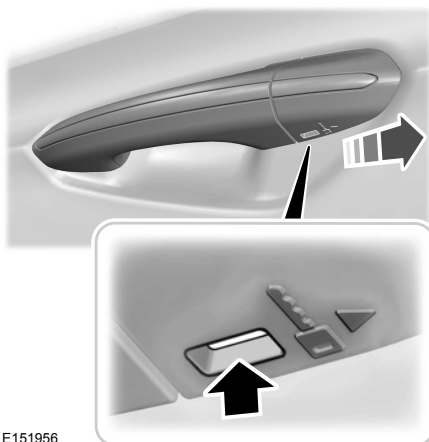
E151795

Note: Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

Using the Key Blade

The key cylinder is under a cap on the driver door handle.

To remove the cap:



E151956

1. Insert the key blade into the slot on the bottom of the handle and apply upward pressure.
2. While maintaining upward pressure, move the cap rearward to release it. Gently remove the key while doing so.

To install the cap:



E151957

1. Place the cap just forward of the key cylinder.
2. Applying pressure to the cap, move it forward until it is in place. You may hear a snap as it engages.

Keys and Remote Controls

Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 69).

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery.



1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

Keys and Remote Controls



REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control** (page 32).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

E218402

3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding the Panic Alarm

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.

Note: For vehicles with intelligent access with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin intelligent access key fob are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the ignition on to start the vehicle.

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Seatbelt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat occupants' seatbelts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.

- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: rear parking aid, blind spot information system, cross traffic alert, lane departure warning, forward collision warning system and restricted touchscreen operation in some markets.
- Track Mode, if your vehicle has this feature, it is restricted.
- Drag Strip, if your vehicle has this feature, it is restricted.
- MyMode, if your vehicle has this feature, it is restricted.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions, if this feature is available in your market.

Note: You may be able to temporarily disable the lane departure warning feature. This feature is automatically enabled with every new key cycle.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off traction control, emergency assist, do not disturb (if your vehicle is equipped with these features), and Sport Mode will not be available to MyKey drivers.

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 94). If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the remote control into the backup slot. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 43).
2. Switch the ignition on.

3. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. From the MyKey menu select the option **Create MyKey**. See **Information Displays** (page 66).
4. When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The programmed restrictions apply when you key off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or transmitter.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using the key or the transmitter you want to program.
2. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. See **Information Displays** (page 66).
3. Follow the instructions in the display.

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display

control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.
MyKey	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non

Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	- The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. - The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). For vehicles with keyless start, make sure you place the key or transmitter into the backup slot. See Passive Anti-Theft System (page 43).
I cannot program the configurable settings.	- The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. - No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 34).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	- The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. - No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 34).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
I lost a key.	Contact an authorized dealer.
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	- The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. - An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. - The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	- An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start. - No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 34).

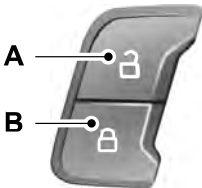
Doors and Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E138628

- A Unlock.
- B Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time. The luggage compartment release button only works when your vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock the driver door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

Note: You can unlock the driver door with the key blade if the remote control is not functioning. See **Remote Control** (page 29).

Note: When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, remote unlocking turns off. Unlock your vehicle using the key blade, then start your vehicle to restore the remote unlocking function. See **Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade** later in this section.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that all doors unlock.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change. Driver door mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control and passive keys. You can also change between the unlocking modes using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Doors and Locks

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators flash. Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors lock again, the horn sounds and the direction indicators flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Double Locking the Doors

WARNING



Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all of the doors are fully closed.



Press the lock button twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm.

Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

Autolock (If Equipped)

Autolock locks all the doors when:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 20 km/h.

Autolock repeats when:

- You open then close any door while the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is 15 km/h or lower.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 20 km/h.

Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when:

- The ignition is on, you have closed all the doors, and your vehicle has been moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h.
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *The doors do not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.*

Enabling or Disabling Autounlock

You can enable or disable the autounlock feature in the information display or an authorized dealer can do it for you. See **General Information** (page 66).

Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control located on the driver and front passenger door panels.

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

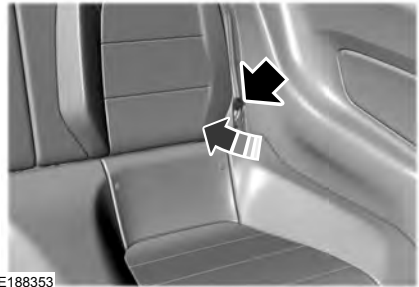
Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: If you have unlocked the doors using this method, you must lock the doors individually to restore the central locking function.

Unlocking the Luggage Compartment (Convertible Only)



If the luggage compartment decklid does not operate because the battery has no charge, do the following:

1. Pull the left-hand side rear seat backrest cushion aside.
2. Insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Turn the key to release the luggage compartment.

Opening the Luggage Compartment

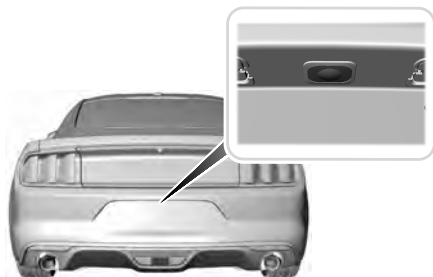
From Inside Your Vehicle



Doors and Locks

Press the button on the instrument panel to unlatch the luggage compartment.

From Outside Your Vehicle



E175208

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate. You need to have your vehicle unlocked or have a passive key within 1 m of the luggage compartment.

With the Remote Control



Press twice within three seconds to open the luggage compartment.

KEYLESS ENTRY

General Information

You can unlock and lock the vehicle without taking the keys out of your pocket or purse when your passive key is within 1 m of your vehicle. The system uses a sensor on the back of the door handle for unlocking and a separate sensor on the face of each door handle for locking.

The system does not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle. See **Remote Control** (page 29).



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 1.5 m from the front door handles and the luggage compartment.

Unlocking Your Vehicle



E248553

With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful to not touch the lock sensor at the same time or pulling the door handle too quickly. The system requires a brief delay to authenticate your passive key.

Doors and Locks

Unlocking Only the Driver Door

You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked, the following occurs:

- If the driver door is the first door opened, the passenger door remains locked. The passenger door can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button located on the driver and passenger door panels. You can unlock the doors individually by pulling the interior door handle.
- If the passenger door is the first door opened, the driver door unlocks.

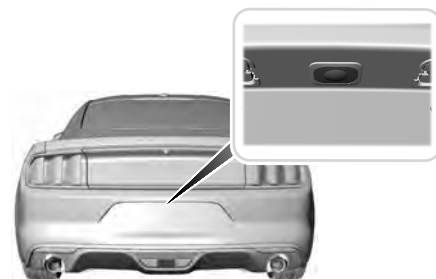
Locking Your Vehicle



E248554

With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

Opening the Luggage Compartment



E175208

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate. The passive key must be within 1 m of your vehicle.

Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys

If the system detects a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door all doors unlock, indicating that a key is inside.

Deactivated Passive Keys

The system deactivates all passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated key. To reactivate a key, press the unlock button on the remote control.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting your vehicle. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart your vehicle if a problem occurs.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

SecuriLock

The system helps prevent your vehicle from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. Using the wrong key may prevent your vehicle from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, it is not operating properly. A message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

Your vehicle arms immediately after switching the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms your vehicle.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes equipped with two intelligent access keys.*

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

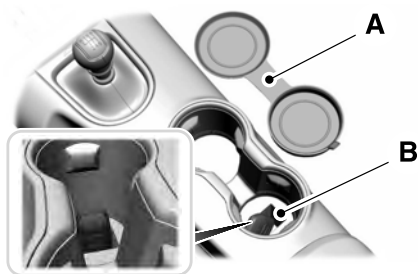
Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

Note: *You can program a maximum of four intelligent access keys to your vehicle.*

You must have two previously programmed intelligent access keys inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed intelligent access keys readily accessible. See an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.



E174956

1. Remove the rubber covering (A) from the cupholder. Place the first programmed key in the backup slot (B) at the bottom of the cupholder, then press the push button ignition switch.
2. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
3. Remove the intelligent access key.
4. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key in the backup slot. Press the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
6. Remove the intelligent access key.
7. Place the unprogrammed intelligent access key in the backup slot and press the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. Verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new intelligent access key.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

Alarm System

WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

Note: Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Alarm	Press the OK button.
Ask on exit	Press the OK button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the OK button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the OK button.

Note: Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 38).

Disarming the Alarm

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 41).

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

Alarm System

WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

Note: Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio unit or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Security

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask

you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Alarm	Press the OK button.
Ask on exit	Press the OK button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the OK button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the OK button.

Note: Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 38).

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 41).

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound and the hazard warning flasher will flash.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 38).

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 41).

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you sit in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 83).



E176634

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

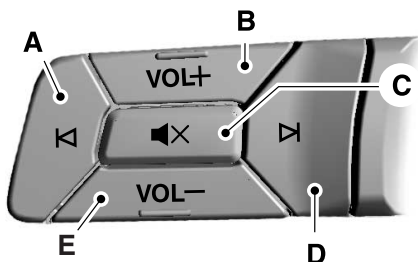


E176635

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E248469

- A Seek down or previous.
- B Volume up.
- C Mute.
- D Seek up or next.
- E Volume down.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

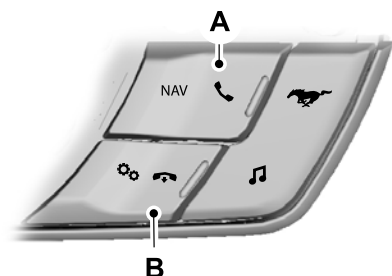
- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek or fast forward through a track.

Steering Wheel

VOICE CONTROL



E248608

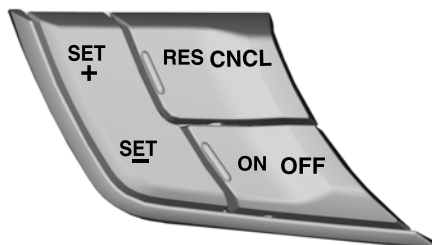
A Make or answer a call.

B End a call.

See your SYNC information.

CRUISE CONTROL

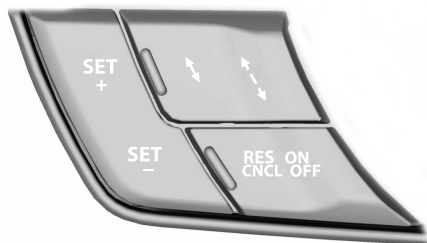
Type One



E174594

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 123).

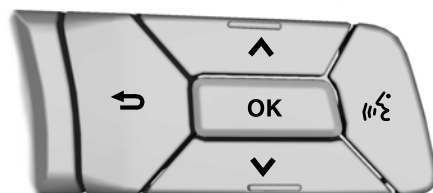
Type Two



E177068

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 123).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E248474

Steering Wheel

Quick Action Menus



E248531

See **Information Displays** (page 66).

Wipers and Washers

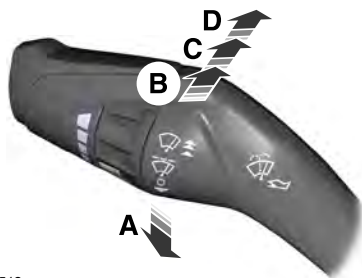
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

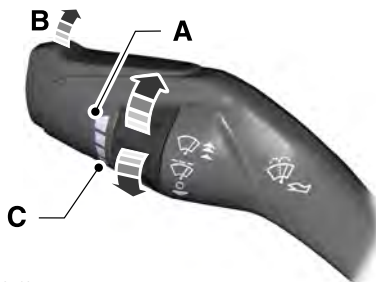
Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.



E210512

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High speed wipe.

Intermittent Wipe



E210513

- A Shortest wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Longest wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

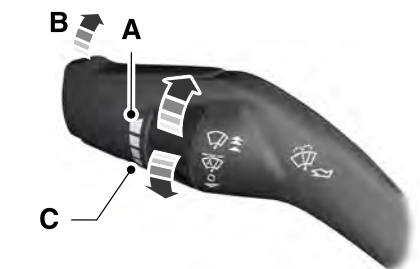
Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

Note: If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

Wipers and Washers



E210515

- A Highest sensitivity.
- B On.
- C Lowest sensitivity.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



E210514

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch autowipers off.

Autowipers Settings

Autowipers default to on and remain on until you switch it off in the information display. When you switch off autowipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.

Lighting

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

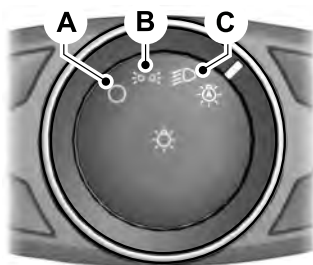
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off.
- B Position lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
- C Headlamps.

Headlamp High Beam



E166216

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Lighting

Headlamp Flasher



E166217

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS

WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Note: If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

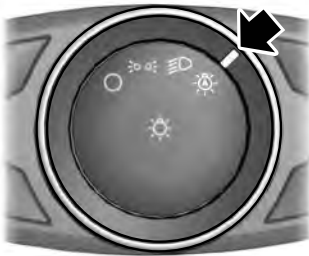
When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

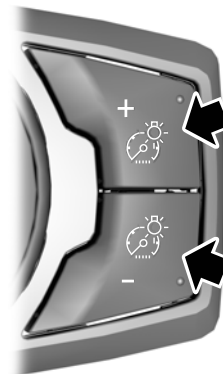
Note: If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps turn on in low light situations, or when the wipers turn on.



E231828

Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING



The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

The system turns the lamps on in daylight conditions.

To switch the system on, switch the lighting control to the off, autolamp or parking lamp position.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

The system turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns off high beams before they can distract other road users. Low beams remain on.

Note: *The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.*

Note: *The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by overriding the system.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may appear in the information display if the camera is blocked.*

Note: *Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.*

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active, the high beams turn on if:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

The high beams turn off if:

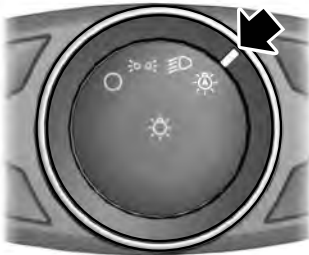
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

Lighting

- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The camera is blocked.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).



E142451

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 54).

Overriding the System

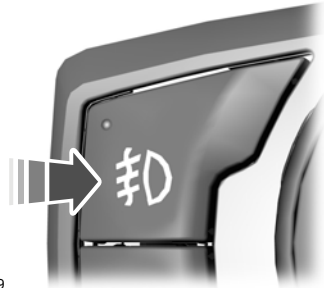
When you switch on the high beams, pushing or pulling the stalk provides a temporary override to low beam.

Automatic High Beam Indicator (if Equipped)



The indicator lamp illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

FRONT FOG LAMPS

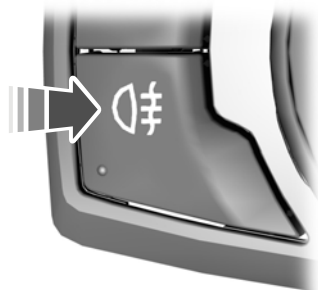


E232249

Press to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except automatic high beam or off.

REAR FOG LAMPS



E232250

WARNING



Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m.

Press to switch the fog lamps on or off.

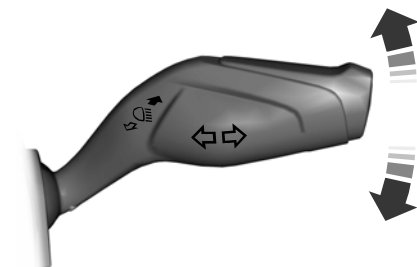
You can switch the fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

Lighting

HEADLAMP LEVELING

This vehicle is equipped with a dynamic automatic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E166224

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press a map lamp button.

Map Lamps



E175199

- A Left-hand side map lamp.
- B Right-hand side map lamp.

Press the button to switch the lamps on or off.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

Adjust the ambient lighting in the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E180087

Note: You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Note: Use the singular control (if equipped) to open both rear windows.

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window will automatically stop and reverse some distance if it detects an obstacle while closing.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window will travel up with no bounce-back protection. The window will stop if you release the switch before the window is fully closed.

Accessory Delay

The window switches remain operational for several minutes when you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

GLOBAL OPENING

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

Note: You can enable or disable this feature in the information display, or see an authorized dealer. See **General Information** (page 66).

Note: To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.

Windows and Mirrors

Opening the Windows

You can open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

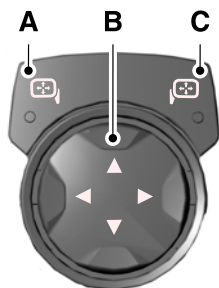
EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E176804

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Adjustment control
- C Right-hand mirror

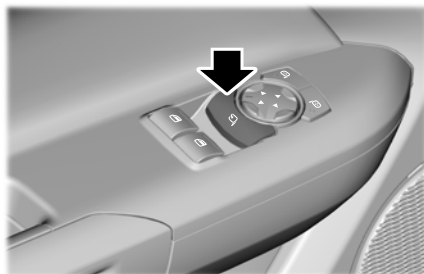
To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control will illuminate.
2. Adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror switch again.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Power-Folding Mirrors



E176805

Press the control to fold the mirror toward the door window glass. Press the control again to fold the mirror back out to its original position.

Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Windows and Mirrors

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 82).

Signal Indicator Mirrors

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing will blink when you switch on the turn signal.

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

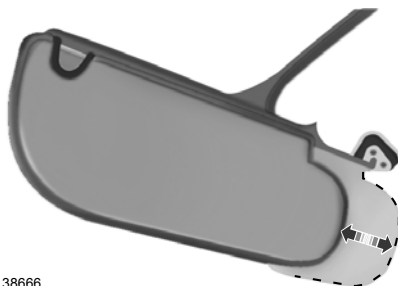
You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. In addition to the standard pivot point, this mirror also includes a second pivot point, letting you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Auto-Dimming Mirror

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

To reduce glare, the mirror dims automatically when it detects bright lights from behind your vehicle. It automatically returns to normal reflection when you select reverse (R) gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

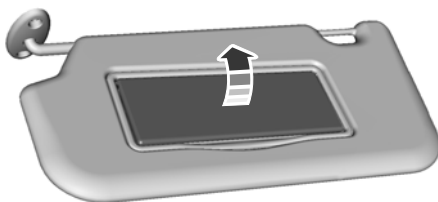
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror

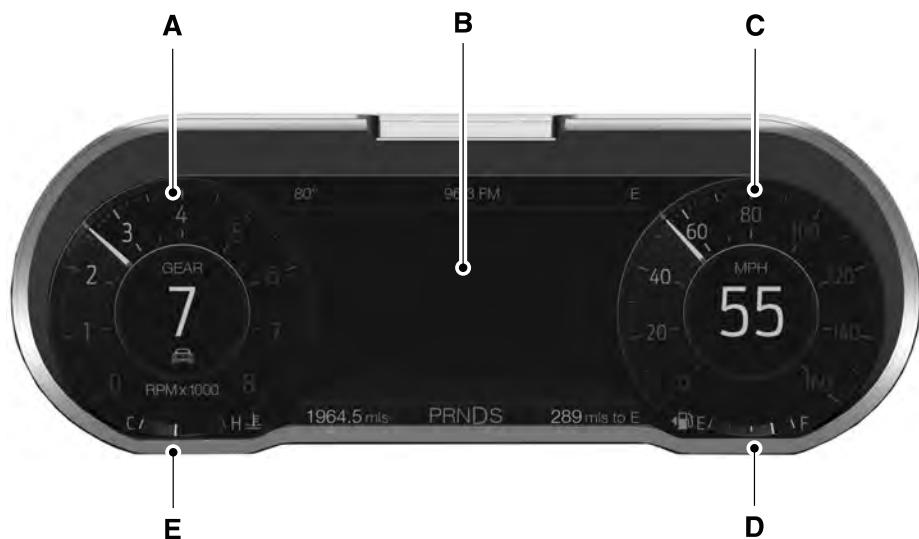


E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES



E249040

- A Tachometer.
- B Information Display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel Gauge.
- E Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.

Information Display

Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display. Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 66).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 66).

Fuel Gauge

Note: The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Instrument Cluster

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

Variations:

Note: *The low fuel warning and distance-to-empty warning can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Distance-to-empty	Fuel gauge position
Highway driving	80 km	1/8th tank
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	80 km	1/4 tank

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let it cool.

Instrument Cluster

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 123).

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic Headlamp High Beam Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the system automatically turns the headlamp high beam on.

See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 55).

Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Brake System Warning Lamp

WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 123).

Instrument Cluster

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on.

Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It flashes when you use the headlamp flasher.

Hood Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Launch Control



Illuminates when this feature is ready, including both slip control and engine RPM hold.



Illuminates when only engine RPM hold is active. See **Track Use** (page 181).

Low Beam Malfunction



Lights when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp



Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

Instrument Cluster

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 167).

Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Service Engine Soon



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.

See **Using Stability Control** (page 116).

See **Using Traction Control** (page 114).

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Trunk Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the trunk is not completely closed.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Keyless Warning Alert

The horn will sound twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key and your vehicle is in ON, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn will also sound twice when you exit your vehicle and attempt to lock the doors manually while the intelligent access key is still in the vehicle. The doors will not lock if the intelligent access key remains in the vehicle.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the vehicle and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

(If Equipped)

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Information Displays

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

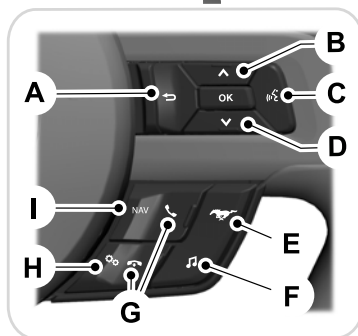


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the quick action menu (QAM) buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Information Display Controls



E249038

- A Back button.
- B Arrow up.
- C Voice command button.
- D Arrow down.
- E Pony button.
- F Audio button.
- G Phone buttons.
- H Settings button.
- I Navigation button.

- Press one of the QAM buttons to enter a menu.
- Toggle **(B)** and **(D)** to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.

Information Displays

- Press the **OK** button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press **(A)** to exit a menu.
- Press the open menu's QAM button at any time to close the menu (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Settings

Settings	
Trip/Fuel Info	
Driver Assist	Auto Engine Off
	Blindspot
	Pre-Collision Assist
	Cross Traffic Assist
	Cruise Control
	Driver Alert
	Hill Start Assist
	Rear Park Aid
	Lane Keeping System
	Tire Monitor
	Wipers
Speedometer km/h or Speedometer MPH	
Advanced Settings	Vehicle
	MyKey
	Display Setup

Information Displays

Pony

WARNING



Track Apps™ is for track use only. Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It is always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

Track Apps™ provides a suite of options to record and optimize your track performances. See **Track Use** (page 181).

Pony		
MyMode	MyMode	
	Add MyMode	You must configure and save MyMode before your selection switches on.
Exhaust Mode	Choose your applicable setting. ¹	
	Quiet Start	
Track Apps	Acceleration Timer	
	Brake Performance	
	Lap Timer	
	Start Option	
Performance Shift Indicator	Shift Point	
	Shift Tone	
	Shift Light Mode	
Launch Control	Launch Control	
	RPM	
Rev Match		
Gauges	Show Gauges	
	Configure MyGauges	
MyColor	Primary Color	
	Secondary Color	

Information Displays

Pony	
	Ambient Light
	Create MyColor
Cluster Appearance	Change with Drive Mode
	Normal
	Sport
	Track

¹ See **Track Use** (page 181).

Note: **Quiet Start** allows you to schedule when the **Exhaust Mode** turns on the **Quiet** setting. The time window can be from 1 to 24 hours.

Note: Depending on your vehicle configuration, some features such as **Exhaust Mode** and **Line Lock** may be if equipped.

Note: The menu options for **Performance Shift Indicator**, **Launch Control**, and **Rev Match** are for manual transmissions only.

Phone

See **General Information** (page 214).

Audio

See **General Information** (page 214).

Navigation (If Equipped)

See **General Information** (page 214).

Airbag

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages display or are available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. See **Information Display Control** (page 49). The information display automatically removes other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

Information Displays

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 44).
Alarm All Sensors Perimeter Sensing	All perimeter sensors are active. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 44).

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Now	The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery State of Charge Low	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off	The battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Your vehicle disables various features to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features operate again as normal.
Turn Power Off To Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

Information Displays

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X door open	The door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	The trunk is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	The hood is not completely closed.
Switches Inhibited Security Mode	The system has disabled the door switches.

Electronic Stability Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
ESC Off On	The driver has disabled or enabled the traction control.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The system is in sport mode.

Engine

Message	Action
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	The engine is overheating and the power has been reduced to assist in lowering the temperature. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.

Exhaust Mode

Message	Action
For Track Use See Manual	Indicates that the exhaust state selected, through the menu or drive mode selection, is for use on the track and may not comply with local noise regulations. Only on vehicles equipped with active exhaust.

Information Displays

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See Hill Start Assist (page 112).

Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	A reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
To START Press Clutch	A reminder to depress the clutch pedal on manual transmission while starting the vehicle.
No Key Detected	The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See Keyless Starting (page 93).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.
Accessory Power is Active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key Program Successful	You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.
Key Program Failure	You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Not Enough Keys Learned	You have not programmed enough keys to the system.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Engine ON	Inform the driver that they are exiting the vehicle and the engine is on.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See General Information (page 164).
Oil Change Required	The oil life left is at 0%. See General Information (page 164).
Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low, inspected the brake system immediately. See Brake Fluid Check (page 172).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Transport / factory mode Contact dealer	Your vehicle is still in Transport or Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See an authorized dealer.
See Manual	The powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not Created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey Active Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Speed limited to XX MPH/km/h	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Near Vehicle Top Speed	MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 130 km/h.
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.
Check Speed Drive Safely	You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.
AdvanceTrac On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, ESC turns on.
Traction Control On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	With a MyKey in use, park aid is always on.

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	You have set the parking brake and you have driven the vehicle more than 5 km/h. If the warning stays on after you have released the parking brake, contact an authorized dealer.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See Rear Parking Aid (page 118).
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Information Displays

Rear Axle

Message	Action
Axle Over Temperature Reduce Speed	This message appears when the oil temperature in the rear differential exceeds a safe limit. Reduce speed to allow the oil temperature to return to normal levels.

Seats

Message	Action
Memory Recall Not Permitted While Driving	A reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} Saved	Shows where you have saved your memory setting.

Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	A reminder to apply the brake when starting your vehicle.
To START Press Clutch	A reminder to apply the clutch when starting your vehicle.
Cranking Time Exceeded	The starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start your vehicle.
Engine Start Pending Please Wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending Start Cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

Information Displays

Steering System

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering lock system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Column Lock Remove and re-insert key while turning wheel to unlock	You need to turn your steering wheel while start your vehicle to unlock your steering column.

Suspension System

Message	Action
Suspension Fault Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	Displays if the adaptive damping system detects a condition that requires service. Your vehicle speed is limited to 130 km/h. Have your vehicle serviced soon.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 195).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 195).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning or your spare tire is in use. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 195). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction control off / Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off or on. See Using Traction Control (page 114).
Spinout Detected Hazards Activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazards are on.

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Transmission Over Temperature Stop Safely	The transmission has overheated and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Transmission Service Required	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	Displays when the transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See Automatic Transmission (page 105).
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	Transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press Brake Pedal	Displays as a reminder to press the brake pedal in order to select a gear.
Transmission Adjusted	Displays when the transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.

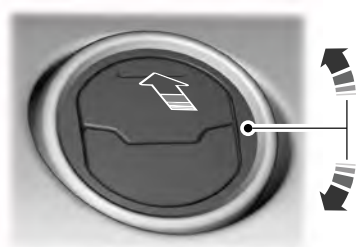
Information Displays

Message	Action
Transmission Adapt-Mode	Displays when the transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup On	Displays when the transmission shift lever is locked and unable to select gears.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup Off	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

Climate Control

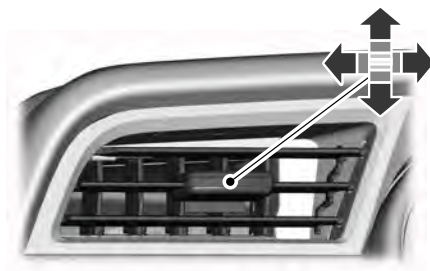
AIR VENTS

Center Air Vents



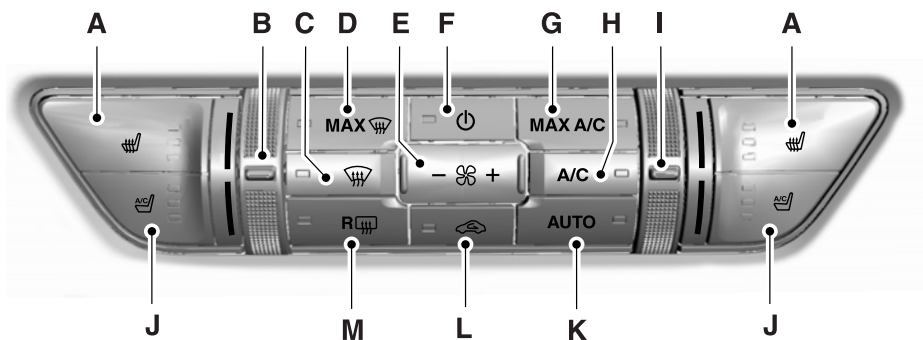
E204054

Side Air Vents



E204055

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E174096

Climate Control

- A **Heated seats:** Press to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 88).
- B **Left-hand temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting on the left-hand side.
Note: The system may limit the maximum difference between driver and passenger settings. Whenever you make an adjustment that would result in a larger difference, both settings change together.
- C **Defrost:** Press to distribute air through the windshield air vents and de-mister. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- D **MAX Defrost:** Press to switch on defrost. The driver and passenger settings set to HI, air flows through the windshield vents, and the fan adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.
Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- E **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- F **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- G **MAX A/C:** Press for maximum cooling. The driver and passenger settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning turns on and the fan adjusts to the highest speed.
- H **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.
Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.
- I **Right-hand temperature control:** Adjusts the temperature setting on the right-hand side.
- J **Climate controlled seats:** Press to switch the climate controlled seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 88).
- K **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air adjust to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.

Climate Control

- L Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off (or prevent you from switching on) in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging or to improve cooling efficiency.

- M Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 82).

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Note: Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

Note: Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary.

Note: The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.

Note: For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

Note: If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

Note: If you select **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press and release **MAX A/C**.

Climate Control

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Note: Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.

Heated Rear Window



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time. Press the button again to switch it off.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

Seats

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in the cargo area inside or outside the vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not fitted with seats and seatbelts. Be sure that everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and is using a seatbelt properly.



Ensure that all parts of passengers are inside the vehicle when in motion.



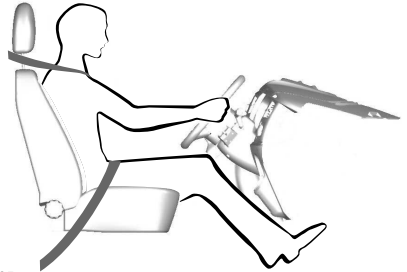
Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.



Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a collision. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a collision or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and air bags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the air bag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Seats

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS



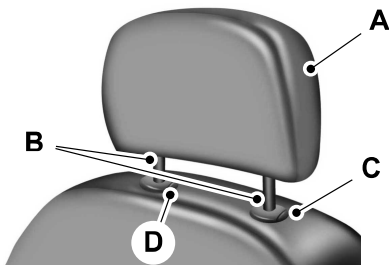
Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

Note: *Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.*

Front Seat Head Restraints



E138642

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

Front Seat Non-Adjustable Head Restraints



E174407

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam covering over the upper structure of the seat backrest.

Properly adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

Seats

Tilting Head Restraints

The front seat head restraints tilt for extra comfort.



E144727

1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, untilted position.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNING



Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

The manual front seats may consist of:



E174553

- A A bar to move the seat backward and forward.
- B A lever to adjust the height of the seat.
- C A lever to adjust the angle of the seatback.

POWER SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



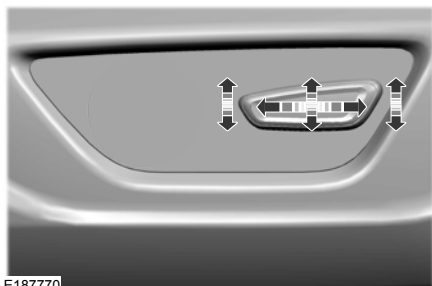
Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

Seats

WARNINGS



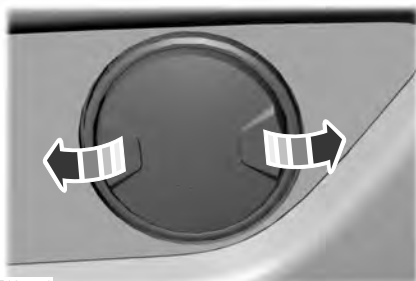
Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



The power seat control is located on the outboard side of the seat. Move the control in the direction of the arrows to raise or lower the seat cushion or to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.

Power Lumbar (If Equipped)

The power lumbar control is located on the side of the driver seat.



Press one side of the control to increase lower back firmness. Press the other side of the control to decrease lower back firmness.

MEMORY FUNCTION (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the following features:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.

The memory control is on the driver door.



Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

Seats

Recalling a PreSet Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The memory features move to the position stored for that preset.

Note: You can only recall a preset memory position when you switch the ignition off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your intelligent access key fob if it is linked to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked key fob is present.

Note: Using a linked key fob to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat to the easy entry position.

Note: Pressing any seat or mirror adjustment control, or any memory button during a memory recall, cancels the operation.

Seat recall movement also stops if you drive your vehicle.

Linking a PreSet Position to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key Fob

Your vehicle can save the preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or intelligent access (IA) keys.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory features to the desired positions.
2. Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone sounds after about two seconds. Continue holding until you hear a second tone.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Note: If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key stored.

REAR SEATS

WARNINGS



When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Accessing the Rear Seats

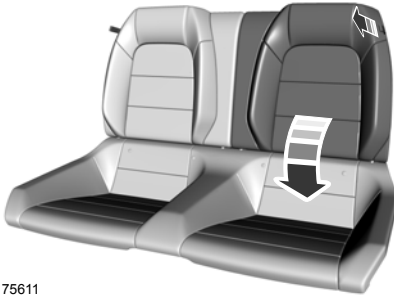


E207088

Use the seatback release to fold the back of the front seat forward for rear seat access. The release handle is on the upper back of the front seat. The seatback has memory and locks automatically in the original position.

Seats

Second Row Split-Folding Rear Seat



E175611

To lower the seatback(s):

1. Pull the strap to release the seatback.
2. Fold the seatback down.

Returning the Seatbacks to the Upright Position

When raising the seatback(s), push the top of the seatback rearward and make sure you hear the seat latch into place. Pull down on the seatback to make sure that it has locked into position.

CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

Heated Seats

WARNING



People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This can cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This damages the heating element and can cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Seats

Cooled Seats

The cooled seats only function when the engine is running.



E146309

Press the cooled seat symbol to cycle through the various cool settings and off. More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on, the feature turns itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

Auxiliary Power Points

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

Note: Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Note: Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the power point and may blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

230 Volt AC Power Point

WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Auxiliary Power Points

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

Storage Compartments

CUP HOLDERS

WARNINGS



Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.



Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

The console includes:

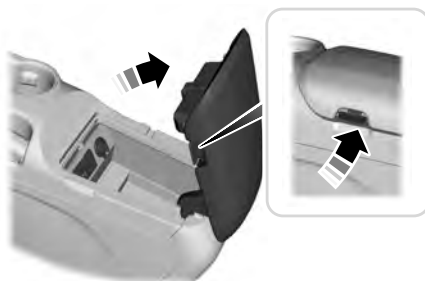
- Cup holder.
- Storage compartment.



E209039

Lift the latch to open the storage compartment to access the following features:

- Auxiliary power point.
- USB port.



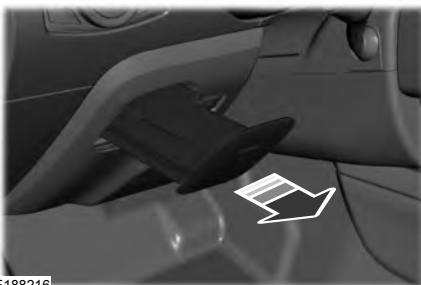
E175706

Locking Storage Bin (If Equipped)

Note: You cannot lock the storage bin when the vehicle is on.

The storage bin locks when you electronically lock the doors. The bin unlocks when you use the remote control to unlock the driver door.

GLASSES HOLDER



E188216

Press near the center of the door to open it. Pull out the tray.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING

Note: The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.

Note: A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Ignition Modes



E248637

The keyless starting system has three modes:

Off: Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

On: All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

Start: Starts the engine.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when the ignition is on and when the engine starts.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that automatically operates.

The steering wheel will lock shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it or when you lock your vehicle.

Note: *The steering wheel will not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds (without the engine starting) before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission)

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *You must have your intelligent access key in the vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of position **P**.*

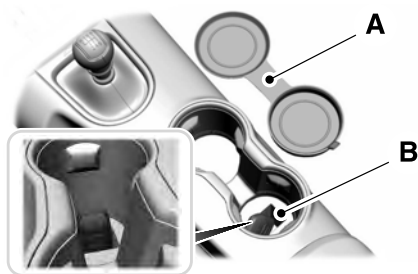
1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

Starting and Stopping the Engine



E174956

1. Remove the rubber covering (A) in the cupholder.
2. Place the remote in the backup slot (B) with the buttons facing up and the keyring toward the front of the vehicle.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), then the START button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal and apply the handbrake.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 66).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.

Note: If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 2.5 cm.
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Fuel and Refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

WARNINGS



Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.



Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

Fuel and Refueling

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 20% (E20).

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS



Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Fuel and Refueling

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 98).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



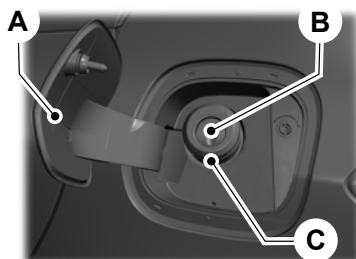
E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

Refueling System Overview

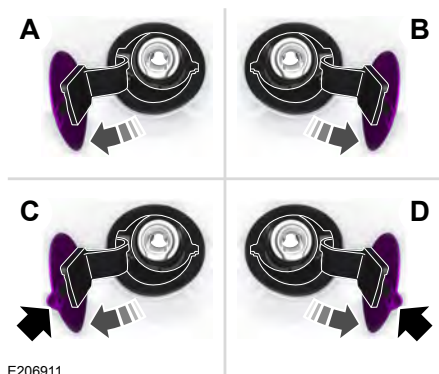


E267248

- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.

Fuel and Refueling



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

WARNINGS

-  Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.
-  Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.
-  Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.
-  Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.
-  Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

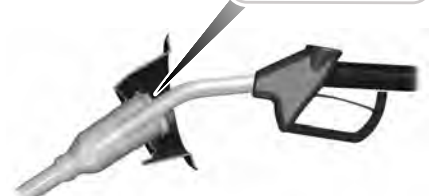
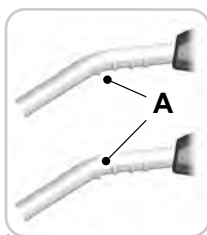
Refueling Your Vehicle

WARNINGS

 When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

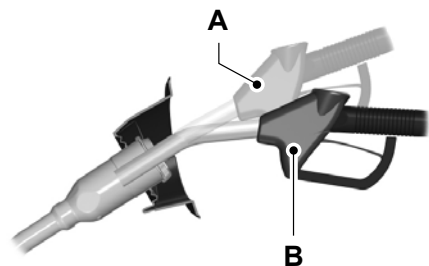
 The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuel and Refueling



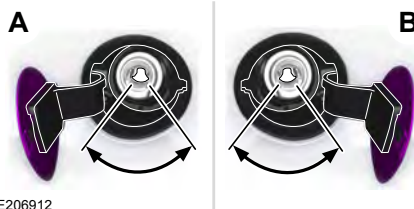
E139202

3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E206912

5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message may appear in the information display.

Message
Check Fuel Fill Inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

Fuel and Refueling

3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 98). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

If this action corrects the problem the message may not immediately reset. If the message remains and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Emission Control

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNINGS



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 149).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not use leaded fuel.

Note: Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Battery charging condition warning lamp.



Malfunction indicator lamp.
Service engine soon warning lamp.

Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 63).

Transmission

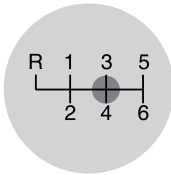
MANUAL TRANSMISSION (if

Equipped)

Using the Clutch

Note: Failure to fully press the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.

Note: Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill when waiting on a hill. These actions can reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.



E144954

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully pressed.

To start the vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.
2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; first (1) or reverse (R).
5. Release the parking brake, then slowly release the clutch pedal when slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully pressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

Recommended Shift Speeds

Note: Do not downshift into first (1) when your vehicle is moving faster than 24 km/h. This can damage the clutch.

2.3L

Recommended Upshifts (For Best Fuel Economy) When Accelerating	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	24 km/h
2 - 3	39 km/h
3 - 4	56 km/h
4 - 5	66 km/h
5 - 6	80 km/h

5.0L

Recommended Upshifts (For Best Fuel Economy) When Accelerating	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	23 km/h
2 - 3	40 km/h
3 - 4	56 km/h
4 - 5	66 km/h
5 - 6	77 km/h

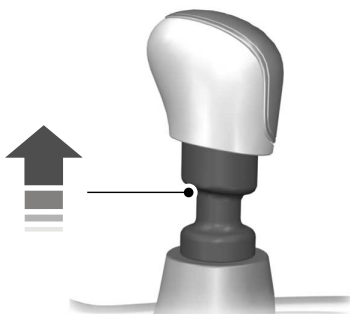
Transmission

Note: Optimal fuel consumption figures are achieved using second gear to pull away from a stationary position when on level ground. On vehicles with manual transmission, we recommend you use second gear to pull away from a stationary position when on level ground.

Reverse

Note: Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into reverse (R). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.

1. Press the clutch pedal to the floor to disengage clutch.
2. Shift into reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up, then moving the lever fully to the left, then forward.



E99067

Note: The gearshift lever can only be moved to reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up before shifting to reverse. This is a lockout feature which protects the transmission from accidentally engaging reverse (R) when intending to select first (1).

If reverse (R) is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and return the gearshift to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, then raise the collar and shift to reverse (R) again.

Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To park your vehicle:

1. Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, hold the clutch pedal down, then shift into first (1).
3. Turn the ignition off.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

(If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the intelligent access key is inside your vehicle.

Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down on the brake pedal.

Transmission

2. Press and hold the button on the top of the gearshift lever.
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
4. Release the button and your transmission remains in the selected gear.



E174572

Transmission Selector Positions

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning. Come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

Reverse (R)

With the selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the selector in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through all gears.

Sport (S)

Putting your vehicle in sport (S):

- Provides additional engine braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This increases engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Provides gear upshifts and downshifts more quickly at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

This feature gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

As long as the engine speed does not exceed the maximum allowable limit, downshifts are allowed. SelectShift automatically downshifts at low engine speeds in order to prevent engine stalls.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

In drive (D) SelectShift automatically upshifts at the optimal max engine speed, regardless of accelerator pedal travel.

In sport (S) mode SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit.

Pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to activate SelectShift.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.

Transmission



SelectShift in drive (D):

- Provides a temporary manual mode for performing more demanding maneuvers where extra control of gear selection is required (for example, when towing or overtaking). This mode holds a selected gear for a temporary period of time dependent on driver inputs (for example, steering or accelerator pedal input).

SelectShift in sport (S):

- Provides a permanent manual gear selection where full control of gear selection is required.

To exit SelectShift mode shift the transmission into another gear, for example, drive (D) or holding the (+) paddle for 1 second.

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (low speed, too high engine speed for requested gear selection), the current gear flashes two times.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to this following chart:

Upshifts When Accelerating (Recommended for Best Fuel Economy)			
Shift from:	3.15 Final Drive Ratio	3.31 Final Drive Ratio	3.55 Final Drive Ratio
1 - 2	14 km/h	14 km/h	13 km/h
2 - 3	21 km/h	19 km/h	18 km/h
3 - 4	29 km/h	27 km/h	26 km/h
4 - 5	39 km/h	37 km/h	34 km/h
5 - 6	42 km/h	40 km/h	37 km/h
6 - 7	51 km/h	50 km/h	45 km/h
7 - 8	63 km/h	60 km/h	55 km/h
8 - 9	71 km/h	68 km/h	63 km/h
9 - 10	79 km/h	76 km/h	70 km/h

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

Transmission

WARNINGS



When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



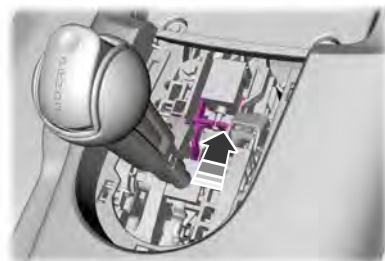
If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

Note: For some markets, this feature is disabled.

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off before performing this procedure.



E174501

2. Locate the white release lever and slide the lever forward when pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
3. Reinstall the console.
4. Start your vehicle and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature is designed to increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm or soft shifts. This operation is normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation. Additionally, whenever you disconnect the battery or install a new battery, the system must relearn the strategy.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.



E184747

1. Using a flat head screwdriver or similar tool, remove the chrome bezel and gearshift bracket at the base of the gearshift lever.

Transmission

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Rear Axle

LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the limited-slip axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration during tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

Extended use of tire sizes other than the manufacturer's specified tire size on these axles could result in a permanent reduction in effectiveness. This loss does not affect your normal driving and should not be noticeable.

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 185).

 See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 63).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Switch the engine off, move the transmission to park (P) and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the anti-lock braking system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.

It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.

Brakes

- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

PARKING BRAKE

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNING



Always set the parking brake and leave your vehicle with the transmission in park (P).

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

WARNING



If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

All Vehicles

WARNING



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



E223664

To set the parking brake, pull the parking brake handle up as far as possible.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press and hold the button at the end of the parking brake handle.
2. Pull the handle up slightly, then push the handle down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

Brakes

WARNINGS



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Note: *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.

3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds. This hold time increases if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Pull away in the normal manner.

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Traction Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING



The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

Switching the System Off



E166706

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

Your vehicle may have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **Principle of Operation** (page 33).

System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes:

- When a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- If a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.

Stability Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

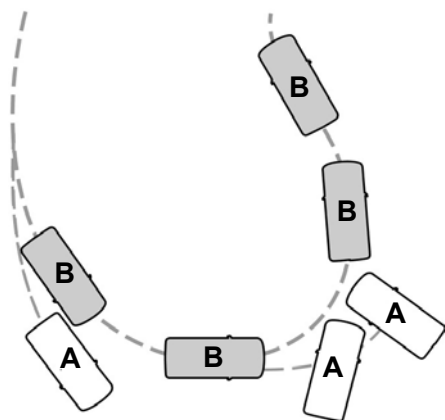
Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 114).

Stability Control



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Electronic Stability Control

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on. The electronic stability control portion of the system is disabled when the transmission is in reverse (R) or, on some models, if you press and hold the electronic stability control button for more than five seconds when you apply the brakes and the vehicle is at a stop. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 114).

ESC features

Button functions	Mode	Stability control off light	Electronic stability control	Traction control system
Default at start-up	-	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Traction control off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed twice rapidly	Sport mode (if equipped)	On	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed and held more than five seconds	ESC disabled	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	ESC fully enabled	Off	Enabled	Enabled

Stability Control

Note: *Do not use Sport mode on public roadways.*

Some models may also come equipped with a sport mode which allows the driver to reduce normal electronic stability control system intervention and provide a more spirited driving experience. To enter sport mode, toggle the stability control button twice rapidly. The message appears in the information display that the system is now in sport mode.

For vehicles equipped with the selectable drive mode feature, electronic stability control sport mode is not available. You can utilize the performance oriented electronic stability control mode by selecting track drive mode. In this mode, electronic stability control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track use only and is not for use on public roads. In all of the selectable drive modes, you can disable traction control and electronic stability control with the electronic stability control switch.

Parking Aids

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and

attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct

operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with MyKey™, the sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey™ is present. See **Principle of Operation** (page 33).

Note: Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: When a trailer is connected to your vehicle, the rear parking aid may detect the trailer and therefore provide an alert. Disable the rear parking aid when a trailer is connected to prevent the alert.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the Ignition on.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 66).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 69).

REAR PARKING AID

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 30 cm away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 30 cm from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

Parking Aids



E130178

Coverage area of up to 1.8 m from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 5 km/h or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 5 km/h or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 5 km/h and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 5 km/h.

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 30 cm away from the bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are grayed out.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS



The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



Reverse your vehicle as slow as possible, higher speeds may limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.



Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Some vehicles may not come equipped with guidelines.

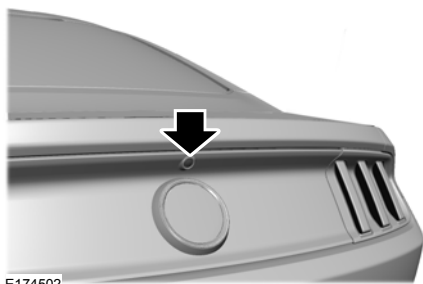


Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.

Parking Aids



The camera is located on the rear cargo door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 5 km/h and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses two types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object.

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is open, no camera features will display.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

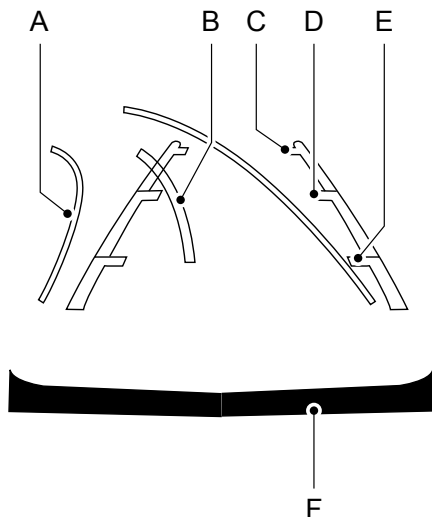
- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Upon a battery disconnect, the active guidelines may not be functional until your vehicle has been driven a short distance and exceeds a speed of 20 km/h.*

Parking Aids



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not show when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R). When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This feature allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission shifts out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

Camera System Settings

The rear view camera system settings can be accessed through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 66).

Parking Aids

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Vehicles equipped with touchscreen

The system will provide an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones will highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

The coverage area is up to 1.8 m from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).
- You pull the hand brake on vehicles with a manual transmission.



E130178

For additional information of the zone coverage and the rear sensing system. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 118).

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

 Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

 Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

 Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts or non-vehicular traffic or roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

 Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

 Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 Adaptive cruise control may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.

WARNINGS

 Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

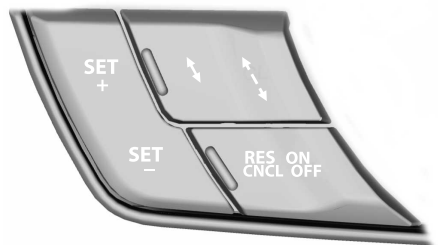
 Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

 Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

Note: *It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.*

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor that projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E177068

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

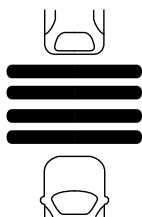
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press **ON**.



The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Cruise Control

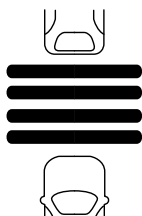


E164805

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press **SET+** or **SET-**.
3. A green indicator light, the current gap setting and your set speed appear in the information display.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



E164805

5. A vehicle image illuminates if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS



When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.



Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- Your vehicle speed falls below 20 km/h.
- You set a new gap distance.

Cruise Control

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

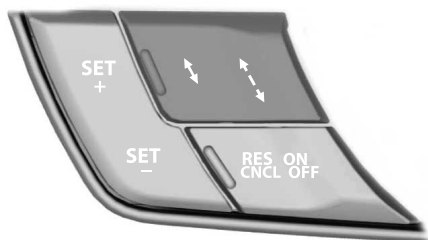
If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. A red warning bar displays on the windshield and you must take immediate action.

Setting the Gap Distance

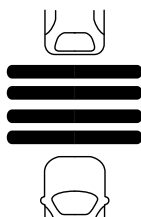
Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



E177070



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Dynamic behavior
1	Sport.
2	Normal.
3	Normal.
4	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Overriding the Set Speed

WARNING



If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.



When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle image does not appear in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Cruise Control

Changing the Set Speed

- Press **SET+** or **SET-** to change the set speed in small increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press **SET+** or **SET-**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-** to change the set speed in large increments. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press **CNCL** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Press **RES**. Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Automatic Cancellation

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display. Automatic braking releases.

The system does not operate below 20 km/h.

Hilly Condition Usage

Note: An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Note: You erase the set speed and gap setting when you switch the system off.

Press **OFF** when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Detection Issues

WARNINGS



On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

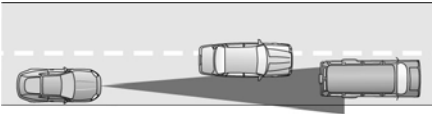


If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

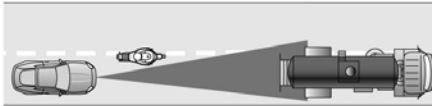
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Cruise Control

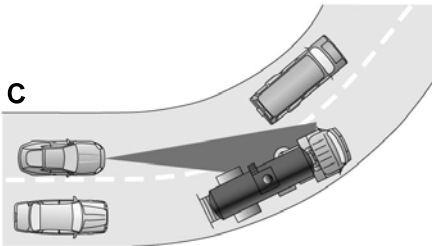
A



B



C



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

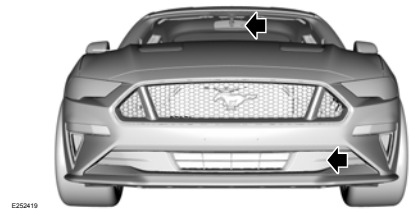
If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

System Not Available

The system may not turn on if there is:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor



E202419

Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Cruise Control

Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING



Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

DRIVER ALERT

WARNINGS



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.



At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



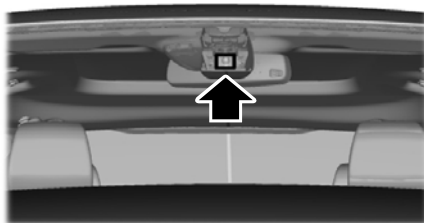
If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: Keep the windshield free from obstructions. For example, bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

Note: If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.



E249505

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a tone and a message in the information display.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the system on and off

You may switch the system on or off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 66). When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: The system will not issue warnings below approximately 64 km/h.

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, another warning may be issued which will remain in the information display for a longer time. Press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning

Driving Aids

System Display

When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required.

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

 The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

 Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

 At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNINGS

 The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

 If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

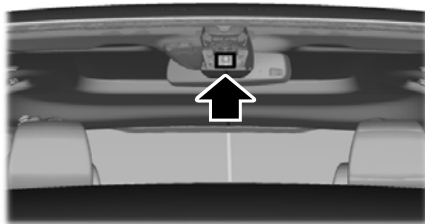
 The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: The system works above 64 km/h.

Note: The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.

Note: The system may not function if the camera is blocked, or if the windshield is damaged or dirty.

Note: When you select aid or both modes and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.



E249505

Driving Aids

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system on or off setting remains stored until you manually change it unless the system detects a MyKey. If the system detects a MyKey, it defaults to on and the mode sets to alert.*



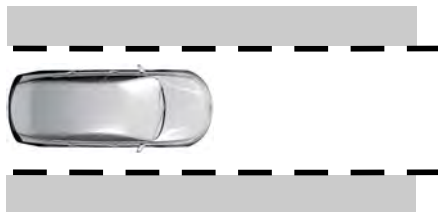
E132099

Press the button on the direction indicator stalk to switch the system on or off.

System Settings

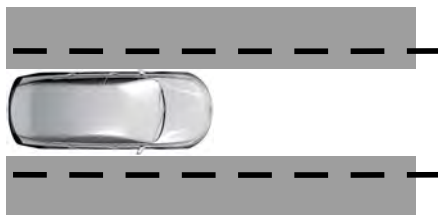
The system allows you to change the following settings; Mode and Intensity. To view or adjust the settings, See **Settings** (page 255). The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



E165515

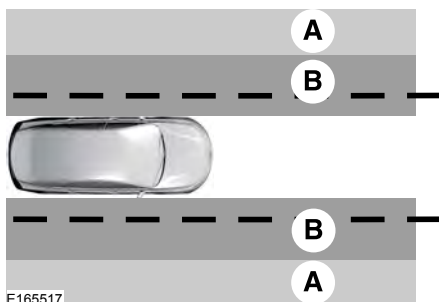
Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

Driving Aids



- A Alert
- B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.

If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane after the lane keeping aid corrects the vehicle, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. **This setting does not affect the aid mode.**

- Low
- Normal
- High

System Display



When you switch on the system, a graphic with lane markings appear in the display screen. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, arrows display with the lane markings.



If you have adaptive cruise control enabled and you are following a vehicle, additional graphics appear in the display.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics do not display.

When the system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

Driving Aids

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The direction indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.
- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental, traffic or vehicle conditions. For example, significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog, following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane or poor headlamp illumination.

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow or Moving Walls: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the direction indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.
- Driving too close to the lane marking.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Your vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature.
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa.

Driving Aids

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

There is standing water on the road.

Faint lane markings, for example partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.

Lane width is too narrow or too wide.

The camera has not been calibrated after a windshield replacement.

Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?

High cross winds are present.

There is a large road crown.

Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.

Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.

The tires have been changed, or the suspension has been modified.

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS



The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

WARNINGS



If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Obtain immediate service from an authorized dealer, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

WARNINGS



At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Driving Aids

WARNINGS



The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

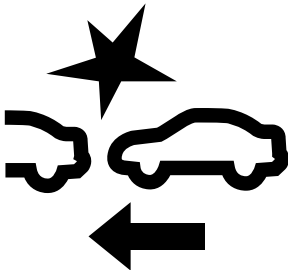
The system is active at speeds above approximately 5 km/h and pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

1. Alert
2. Brake Support
3. Active Braking



E255268

Alert: When activated, a flashing visual warning and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: Assists the driver in reducing collision speed by preparing the brake system for rapid braking. Brake support does not automatically activate the brakes, but if the driver presses the brake pedal even lightly, brake support could add additional braking up to full force.

Active Braking: Active braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

Note: *If you perceive Pre-Collision Assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.*

Note: *The system turns off when you manually disable AdvanceTrac™, or when you select **Track** mode.*

Distance Indication and Alert

Distance Indication and Alert is a function that provides a graphical indication of the time gap to other preceding vehicles traveling in the same direction. The Distance Indication and Alert screen in the information display shows a graphic similar to the one that follows.



E190004

If the time gap to a preceding vehicle is small, a red visual indication displays to the driver.

Driving Aids

Note: *Distance Indication and Alert deactivates and the graphics do not display when adaptive cruise control is active.*

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h	Normal	Grey	>25 m	>0.9sec
100 km/h	Normal	Yellow	17–25 m	0.6sec – 0.9sec
100 km/h	Normal	Red	<17 m	<0.6sec

Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings

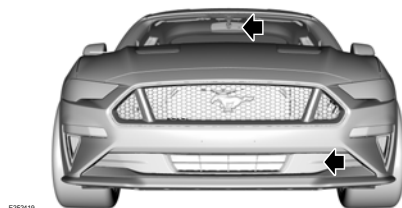
You can adjust the Alert and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 66).

You can switch the distance alert and indication function off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

If required, you can switch active braking off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

Note: *Active braking automatically turns on every time you switch your vehicle on.*

Blocked Sensors



If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. The radar sensor is located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. With an obstructed radar, the Pre-Collision Assist system does not function and cannot detect a vehicle ahead. With the front camera obstructed, the Pre-Collision Assist system does not respond to pedestrians or stationary vehicles and the system performance on moving vehicles reduces. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

Driving Aids

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Note: Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.

Note: If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message may display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor automatically recalibrates successfully.

DRIVE CONTROL (If Equipped)

Selectable Drive Modes

Selectable drive modes deliver a customized driving experience using a variety of electronic vehicle systems. The systems optimize vehicle dynamics and powertrain response based on your selected mode. Systems associated with selectable drive modes are:

- Electronically power assisted steering. See **Steering** (page 134).
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 115).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving input.
- Adaptive dampers (if equipped).
- Active exhaust adjusts the sound characteristics of your vehicle (if equipped).

Using Selectable Drive Modes

Note: Your vehicle may have some of the drive modes that follow.

MODE To change the drive mode setting, press the mode button on the instrument panel under the display. The first press illuminates the selected mode, subsequent presses change the selected mode.

Note: Mode changes are not available when the ignition is off or when the transmission is in reverse (R). Some modes may be unavailable when the transmission is in drive (D) or sport (S).

Modes:

- **Normal** – Best suited for everyday driving. If your vehicle is equipped with adaptive dampers, the suspension delivers a balanced combination of comfort and handling. Selectable steering defaults to **Normal** but can be changed using the steering button.
- **Sport** – Engages when you shift your automatic transmission into sport (S). Sport mode increases throttle response and helps your vehicle accelerate faster, but does not change the vehicle dynamics or stability system.
- **Sport +** – Best suited for spirited driving. This mode increases throttle response, and if your vehicle is equipped with active exhaust, it takes on a more powerful tone. If your vehicle is equipped with adaptive dampers, the suspension becomes stiffer. This mode has less body motion and more precise steering. Selectable steering defaults to **Sport** but can be changed using the steering button.
- **Track** – Provides a performance driving experience. Throttle response increases, and if your vehicle is equipped with active exhaust, it takes on a more powerful tone. A performance oriented traction control mode is automatically utilized. In this mode, traction control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track usage only. This mode is not intended for public roads. See **Using Stability Control** (page 116). If your vehicle is equipped with adaptive dampers, the suspension is optimized for transient handling maneuvers. This mode offers maximum control and confidence in handling on road courses or auto-cross style events. Selectable steering defaults to **Sport** but can be changed using the steering button.

Driving Aids

- **Drag Strip** - Provides a performance driving experience tailored to driving on a drag strip. The engine responds directly to your inputs, and if your vehicle is equipped with active exhaust, it takes on a more powerful tone. This mode is not intended for public roads. If your vehicle is equipped with adaptive dampers, the setting is optimized for straight line maximum acceleration. Selectable steering defaults to **Sport** but can be changed using the steering button.
- **Snow / Wet** - Provides a confident handling driving experience during poor weather. If your vehicle is equipped with adaptive dampers, the suspension delivers a balanced combination of comfort and handling. Selectable steering defaults to **Normal** but can be changed using the steering button.

Using MyMode (If Equipped)

You can use **MyMode** to create a unique drive mode.

To create or save **MyMode**, press the Mustang button on the steering wheel and access the menu. See **General Information** (page 66). The available systems display. Select your desired settings using the appropriate buttons and menus. Press and hold OK to save your settings. **MyMode** is added to the drive mode list and can be selected the next time you drive your vehicle.

Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to make sure it properly operates. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear position, the selected mode defaults to **Normal**.

Note: Pre-Collision Assist is automatically disabled when **Track** mode is selected. See **Pre-Collision Assist** (page 135).

Note: If your vehicle has adaptive dampers, the steering setting is optimized to work with each drive mode. Other steering settings may not be available.

Selectable Steering

Note: The steering setting defaults to **Normal** if the battery is disconnected or removed.



Press the steering button on the instrument panel to change the steering feel. The first press illuminates the selected mode, subsequent presses change the selected mode.

Modes:

- **Normal** - Default factory setting.
- **Sport** - Slightly higher effort required for steering with more road force felt through the steering wheel.
- **Comfort** - Slightly less effort required for steering with less road force felt through the steering wheel.

Note: A soft feedback bump in the steering wheel may be felt after you make a selection.

Load Carrying

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS



Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.



Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.



Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.



Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.



Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 208).



Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

Note: *When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

Towing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNING



Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Emergency Towing

WARNING



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain or transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies or vehicle transport trailer) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You shift into neutral (N). If you cannot shift into neutral (N), you may need to override the gearshift lever. See **Transmission** (page 104).
- Maximum speed is 56 km/h.
- Maximum distance is 80 km.

Recreational Towing

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 79).

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are to make sure you do not damage the transmission during towing.

Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is required to recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, for example when using a vehicle transport trailer. Otherwise, you cannot tow your vehicle.

Convertible Top (If Equipped)

OPENING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

When you use the top, you must first unlatch it from the windshield and then use the convertible top control.

Note: *The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 5 km/h. A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down, the top operates.*

Note: *When you latch or unlatch the convertible top, the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.*

To unlatch the convertible top:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop. The Ignition must be on. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.
2. Check the convertible top stowage compartment behind the rear seat to be sure it is empty. Make sure the convertible top outer surface is free of debris.
3. Move the latch handle, above the interior mirror, down toward the windshield and rotate the handle clockwise to release the convertible top.



E174571

The windows open automatically when you press the convertible top control.

To open the convertible top:

1. Press and hold the convertible top control on the overhead console, until the windows are completely down and the top stores completely.
2. Release the convertible top control.



E174568

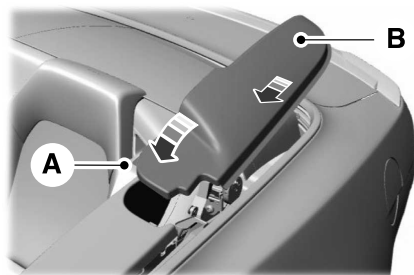
Note: *Do not store articles behind the rear seat. Articles in the convertible top stowage compartment may break the rear glass window when you open the top.*

Note: *Opening the convertible top when the top material is wet may cause mold or mildew.*

Convertible Top (If Equipped)

Using the Tonneau Caps

Your convertible top also includes two tonneau caps, one for each side of the vehicle. These caps stow inside the trunk.



E205441

- A. Leading edge.
- B. Side edge.

After opening your convertible top, place the tonneau caps between the top and your vehicle trim moulding:

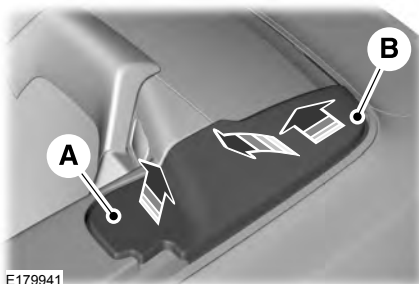
1. Insert tab A under the trim.
2. When tab A is under the trim slot, angle B down so the edges slide under the surrounding moulding and secure into place between the trim edges.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle to install the second tonneau cap.

CLOSING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

Closing the convertible top is a three-step process: Remove both of the tonneau caps, press the convertible top control to close the top, and then close the latch.

To remove the tonneau caps:

1. Slide B toward the center of the vehicle to release the edges from the surrounding trim.
2. Lift up on B, and then pull the piece back to release tab A from the trim.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle.
4. Make sure you stow both pieces in the trunk.



E179941

Note: The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 5 km/h. A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down, the top operates.

Note: You must remove the tonneau caps before you are able to close the top or a chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. Remove and stow the caps in the trunk, and then press the convertible top control again.

Note: When you latch or unlatch the convertible top, the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.

Convertible Top (If Equipped)

To close the convertible top:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop and make sure you switch the ignition on. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.
2. Press and hold the convertible top control. When the convertible latch handle is within reach, make sure it is down and that you rotate it clockwise so the latch is in the fully opened position. Continue pressing the convertible top control until the windows lower completely, and the top unfolds and moves forward toward the windshield header.
3. When the top lines up evenly with the windshield header, release the convertible top control.



E178453

Note: If you keep the top open for an extended period of time or if the temperature is low, the top material may shrink slightly. If this happens, pull on the latch handle to secure the top.



E174568

The final step when closing the convertible top is to lock the latch.

To lock the latch on the convertible top:

1. Pull down on the latch handle and rotate it counter-clockwise to secure the convertible top.
2. After securing the convertible top fully, push the latch handle up into the stowed position to secure the latch.

Driving Hints

BREAKING-IN

Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 km. During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 km in town and for the first 1,500 km on freeways.

Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,500 km. Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING



If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 61).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine continues to operate with limited power for a short period of time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine reduces. The air conditioning switches off and the engine cooling fan operates continually.

1. Gradually reduce your speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Immediately switch the engine off to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 168).
5. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 205).
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.

Driving Hints

- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.
- Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25°C.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING

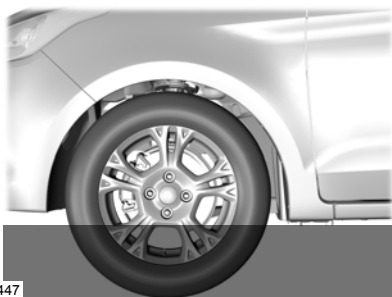


Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

Note: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E266447

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS



Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Driving Hints



To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Roadside Emergencies

HAZARD FLASHERS

Note: The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery loses charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.



The flasher control is on the instrument panel. Use your hazard flashers when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the button again to switch them off.

FIRST AID KIT

The first aid kit can be stowed under the front passenger seat or in the luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE (If Equipped)

The warning triangle can be stowed under the front passenger seat.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Note: When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once the vehicle determines the systems are safe, then the vehicle allows you to restart.

Note: In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact a qualified technician.

The fuel pump shutoff stops the flow of fuel to the engine in the event of a moderate to severe crash. Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a crash, you may restart your vehicle.

1. Press **START/STOP** to switch off your vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and **START/STOP** to switch on your vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press **START/STOP** to switch off your vehicle.
4. You can attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and **START/STOP**, or press **START/STOP** without pressing the brake pedal.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Roadside Emergencies

WARNINGS



Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle.

Note: Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

Note: Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

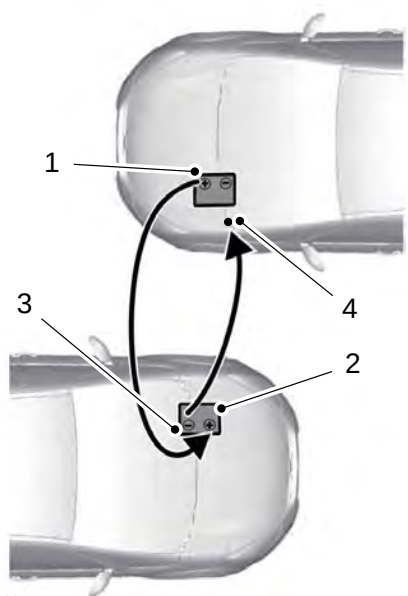
WARNINGS



Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.



Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.

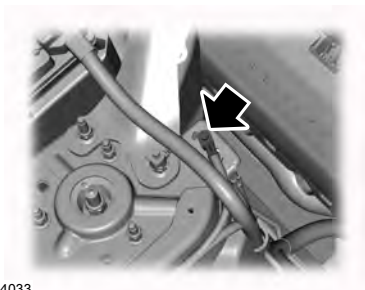


E142664

Note: In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.

Roadside Emergencies



E204033

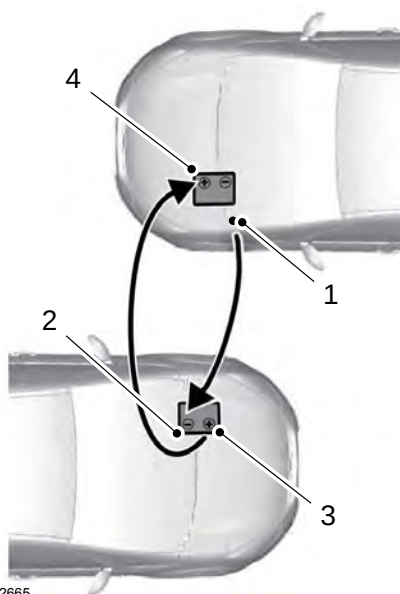
Note: You can use the optional connection point location shown above to ground your vehicle.

Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

Roadside Emergencies

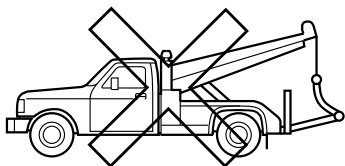
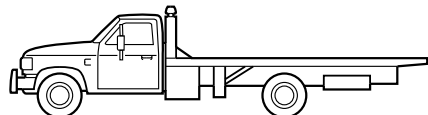
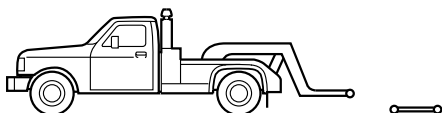
POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicator lamps in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

The lamps turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button (if equipped) on the remote entry transmitter.
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. If you tow your vehicle incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

The rear wheels must be on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the front using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

The front wheels must be on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the front fascia.

TOWING POINTS

Due to local market requirements in some countries, some vehicles may be equipped with a recovery hook.

Recovery Hook Location

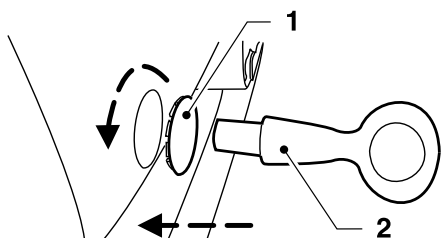
If your vehicle is equipped with a screw-in recovery hook, it is with the spare tire kit or the rear under floor storage.

Installing the Recovery Hook

There is an installation point for the recovery hook located behind the fascia.

Note: The screw-in recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the recovery hook is fully tightened.

Roadside Emergencies



E146284



E188420

Remove the recovery hook cover by prying it off at the notch with a screwdriver or similar object.

Note: Use a soft cloth to cover the prying tool. This helps prevent scratch marks to the vehicle's paint.

Fuses

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Power Distribution Box

WARNINGS



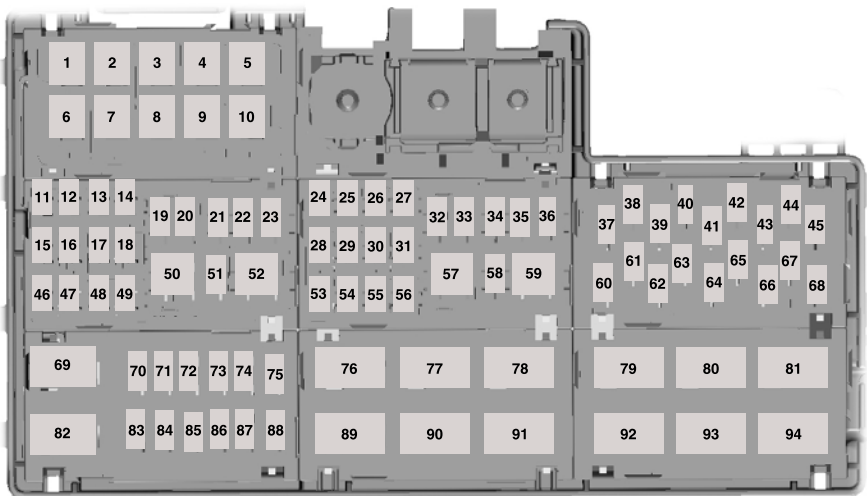
Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 173).



E174563

Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	60A ¹	Electronic fan 1 (Shelby).
2	60A ¹	Electronic fan 3 (Shelby).
3	30A ¹	Electronic fan 1 (except Shelby).
4	40A ¹	Electronic fan 3 (except Shelby).
5	50A ¹	Automatic brake system pump.
6	50A ¹	Body control module.
7	60A ¹	Body control module.
8	50A ¹	Body control module.
9	40A ¹	Rear window defroster.
10	40A ¹	Blower motor.
11	30A ²	Left-hand front window.
12	30A ²	Driver seat.
13	30A ²	Passenger seat.
14	30A ²	Climate-controlled seat module.
15	20A ²	Convertible top motor.
16	—	Not used.
17	20A ²	Convertible top motor.
18	—	Not used.
19	20A ³	Steering column lock relay (except Shelby).
	10A ³	TCU module (Shelby).

Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
20	10A ³	Brake on-off switch.
21	20A ³	Horn.
22	10A ³	Powertrain control module relay.
23	10A ³	Air conditioning clutch.
24	30A ²	Voltage quality module.
25	20A ²	Steering column lock relay (Shelby).
26	25A ²	Windshield wiper motor.
27	—	Not used.
28	30A ²	Automatic brake system valve.
29	—	Not used.
30	30A ²	Starter motor solenoid.
31	—	Not used.
32	10A ³	Latch relay coil.
33	15A ³	Run/Start (except Shelby).
	20A ³	Left-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps (Shelby).
34	15A ³	Exhaust valves.
35	20A ³	Right-hand high-intensity discharge headlamps (Shelby).
36	10A ³	Alt sense.
37	—	Not used.
38	20A ³	Vehicle power 1.
39	—	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
40	20A ³	Vehicle power 2.
41	15A ³	Fuel injectors.
42	15A ³	Vehicle power 3.
43	—	Not used.
44	15A ³	Vehicle power 4 (except Shelby).
	30A ³	Ignition coils (Shelby).
45	—	Not used.
46	20A ²	Differential pump (Shelby).
47	—	Not used.
48	30A ²	Fuel pump #2 (Shelby).
49	30A ²	Fuel pump.
50	—	Steering column lock relay.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Horn relay.
53	20A ²	Cigar lighter.
54	20A ²	Auxiliary power point.
55	25A ²	Electronic fan 2.
56	—	Not used.
57	—	Air conditioning clutch relay.
58	—	Not used.
59	—	Exhaust valves relay.
60	5A ³	Powertrain control module.
61	—	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
62	5A ³	Anti-lock brakes run-start switch.
63	—	Not used.
64	5A ³	Electronic power assist steering.
65	—	Not used.
66	5A ³	Blind spot information system. Rear view camera. Air conditioning compressor relay coils. Vehicle dynamics module.
67	—	Not used.
68	10A ³	Headlamp leveling switch.
69	—	Auxiliary power point relay.
70	—	Not used.
71	—	Not used.
72	—	Not used.
73	—	Not used.
74	5A ³	Mass air flow sensor.
75	5A ³	Rain sensor module.
76	—	Rear window defroster relay.
77	—	Electronic cooling fan 2 relay (except Shelby).
78	—	Run/Start relay (except Shelby).
79	—	Not used.
80	—	Windshield wiper relay.
81	—	Starter motor solenoid relay.
82	—	Powertrain control module relay.
83	—	Power mini fan relay (Shelby).
84	—	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
85	—	Not used.
86	—	Not used.
87	10A ³	Heated exterior mirrors.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Electronic fan 1 relay.
90	—	Differential pump relay (Shelby).
91	—	Electronic fan 3 relay (except Shelby).
92	—	Blower motor relay.
93	—	Fuel pump #2 relay (Shelby).
94	—	Fuel pump relay.

¹ J-case fuses.

² M-case fuses.

³ Micro fuses.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is in the right-hand side of the passenger footwell behind a trim panel and plastic key code card.

To remove the trim panel, lift it from the rear retaining hooks, while pulling it toward you and swinging it away from the side. To reinstall it, line up the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut.

To reach the fuse panel, first remove the key code card.

After replacing a fuse, return the key code card to the original position. To reinstall the trim panel, lineup the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut to reinstall the trim panel.

Fuses



E174564

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	—	Not used.
2	7.5A	Power mirror memory module (driver side mirror). Memory seat module.
3	20A	Driver console unlock.
4	—	Not used.
5	20A	Subwoofer amplifier.
6	—	Not used.
7	—	Not used.
8	—	Not used.
9	—	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
10	5A	Telematics.
11	—	Not used.
12	7.5A	Climate control module.
13	7.5A	Gateway module. Steering column control module. Instrument cluster.
14	10A	Electronic power module.
15	10A	Gateway module.
16	15A	Decklid release.
17	5A	Battery backed sounder.
18	5A	Intrusion sensor module.
19	7.5A	Electronic power module.
20	7.5A	Headlamp control module.
21	5A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor. Front camera.
22	5A	Not used (spare).
23	10A	Switches. Power windows. Rear-view mirror.
24	20A	Central lock/unlock.
25	30A	Vehicle dynamics module.
26	30A	Right-hand front-window motor (power distribution module).
27	30A	Amplifier.
28	20A	Auxiliary body module.
29	30A	Left-hand rear-window power.
30	30A	Right-hand rear-window power.
31	—	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
32	10A	Remote keyless entry. Multi-function display. SYNC Global positioning system module. Gauges.
33	20A	Audio head unit.
34	30A	Run-start bus.
35	5A	Not used (spare).
36	15A	Auxiliary body module.
37	20A	Heated steering wheel module.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING



Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

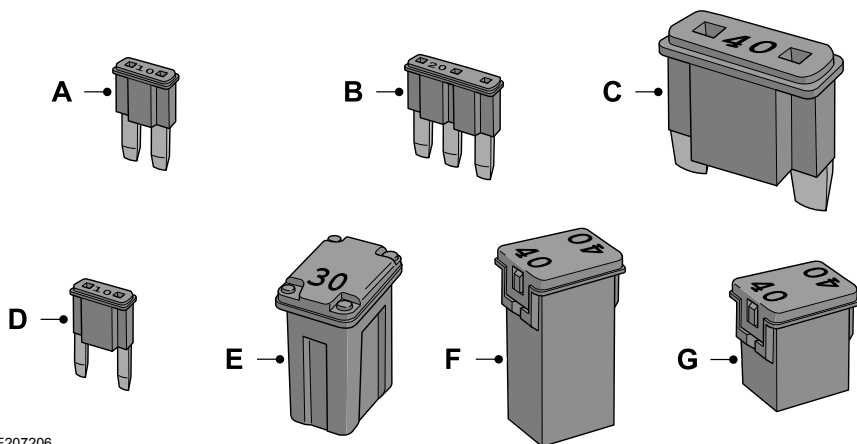


E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuses

Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS



Do not work on a hot engine.



Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 173).
- Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 205).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 187).

Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 167).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 168).

- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 172).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 205).

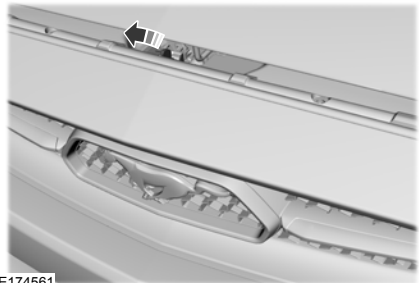
OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



E142457

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.



E174561

Maintenance

3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.



E256471

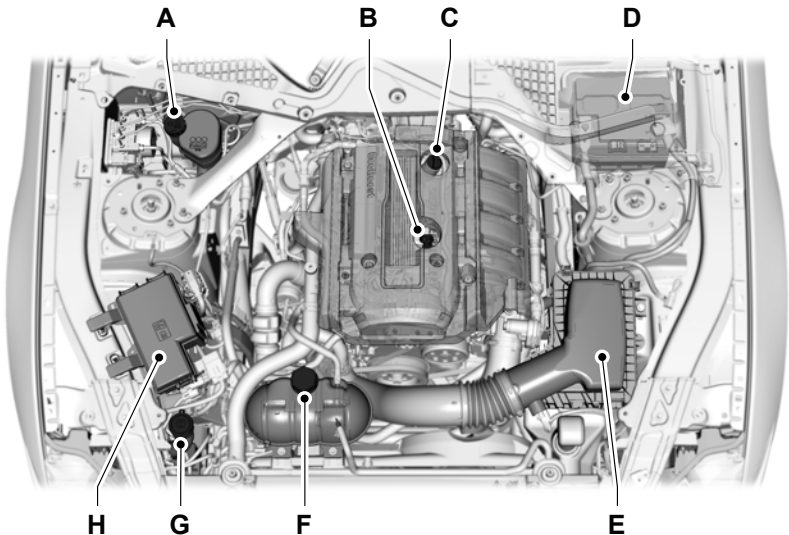
4. Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm.

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

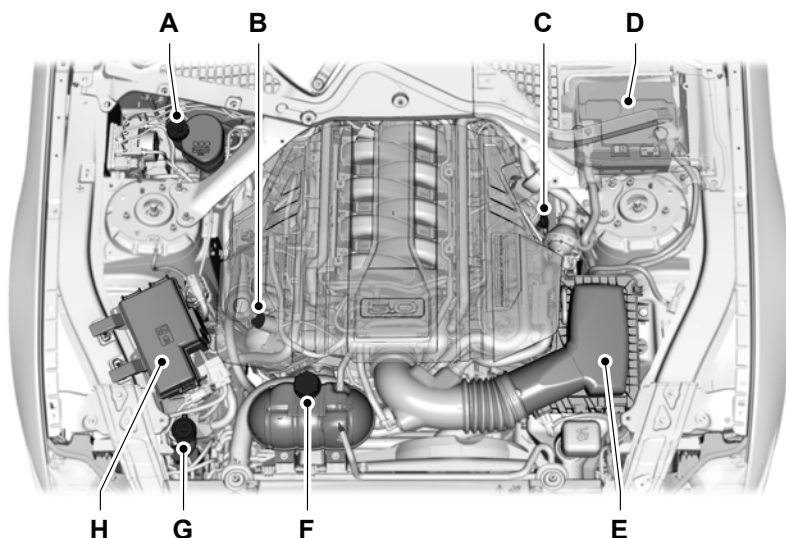


E227468

Maintenance

- A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 172).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 167).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 167).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 173).
- E Air filter.
- F Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 168).
- G Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 173).
- H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 154).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 5.0L



E227469

- A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 172).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 167).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 167).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 173).
- E Air filter.

Maintenance

- F Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 168).
- G Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 173).
- H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 154).

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E161560

- A MIN
B MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.

Note: Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS



Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications.
4. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change indicator.

Maintenance

From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and description
Settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Vehicle	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil Life	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to Reset	Press and hold the OK button until the instrument cluster displays the following message. Reset Successful
	When the oil change indicator resets the instrument cluster displays 100%. Remaining Life {00}%
	If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process. Not Reset
	Reset Cancelled

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS



Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C and -37°C. Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Maintenance

Adding Coolant

WARNINGS



Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Take care not to put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir or windshield washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Note: *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

Maintenance

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification.

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Maintenance

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS



Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.

2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNING



To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

Maintenance

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

If required, have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval.

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Refer to your scheduled maintenance information for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS



Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Maintenance

WARNINGS



A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 172).

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Maintenance

WARNINGS



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 165).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Maintenance

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

Note: Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Power Windows** (page 58).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Replace the wiper blades at least annually for optimum performance.

You can improve poor wiper quality by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

Service Position

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when moving the wiper arm to the service position.



E211254

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades. You can manually move the wiper arms to the service position when you switch the ignition off. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position.

Note: You cannot move the wiper arms to the service position manually when you switch the ignition on.

Note: You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice.

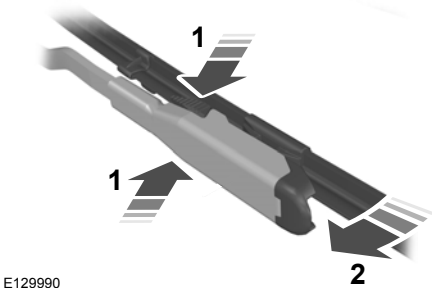
Maintenance

Note: Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the ignition on.

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

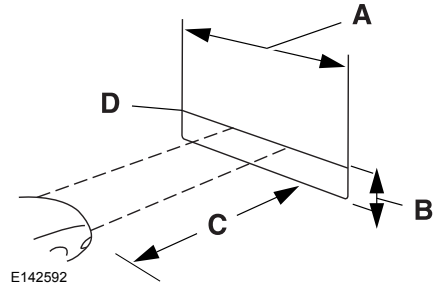


1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim

Headlamp Aim Target



- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
- B Center height of headlamp to the ground.
- C 25 ft (7.6 m).
- D Horizontal reference line.

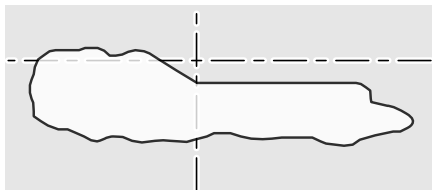
Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

Note: There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.

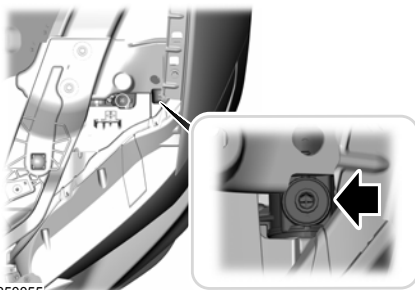
4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.

Maintenance



E209826

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the right-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 7.5 cm below the horizontal reference line.



E250055

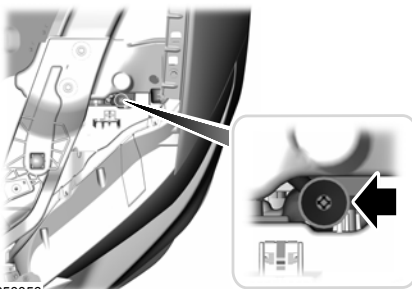
7. To adjust the vertical aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

Note: To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.

8. Close the hood and switch the low beam headlamps off.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim should not be required although it is adjustable.



E250056

1. Locate the adjuster within the extension tube attached to the rear of the headlamp assembly.
2. To adjust the horizontal aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

CHANGING A BULB

WARNINGS



Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.



Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 178).

The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

LED Lamps

LED lamps are not serviceable items. Contact an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following are LED lamps:

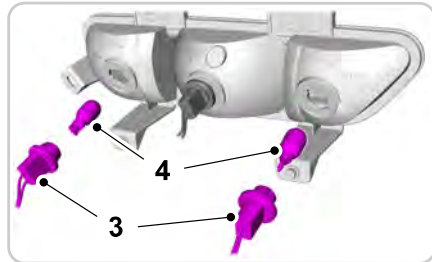
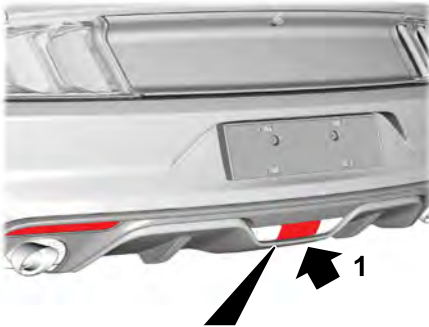
- Headlamps.
- Rear lamp.
- Brake lamp.

Maintenance

- Front Fog Lamp.
- Daytime Running Lamp.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.
- Front Direction Indicator.
- Rear direction indicator lamp.
- License plate lamp.

Reversing Lamp

1. Locate the reverse lamp bulb under the rear bumper of your vehicle. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



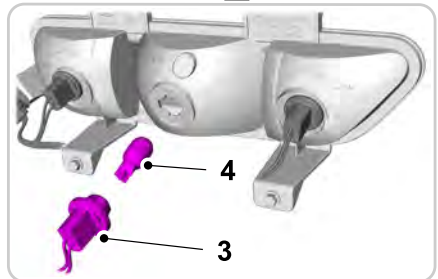
E199707

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Rear Fog Lamp

1. Locate the rear fog lamp bulb under the rear bumper of your vehicle. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E199706

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Maintenance

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front position lamp.	LED	LED
Front direction indicator.	LED	LED
Daytime running lamps.	LED	LED
Headlamps	LED	LED
Front fog lamp.	LED	LED
Side direction indicator.	LED	LED
Brake and rear position lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	LED
Rear direction indicator.	LED	LED
Rear fog lamp.	W16W	16
Reversing lamps.	W16W	16
License plate lamp.	LED	LED

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. Contact an authorized dealer.

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Glove compartment lamp.	W5W	5
Interior lamp.	W5W	5
Vanity mirror lamp.	T10	3
Luggage compartment lamp.	W5W	5

Note: To replace an instrument panel bulb, contact an authorized dealer.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING



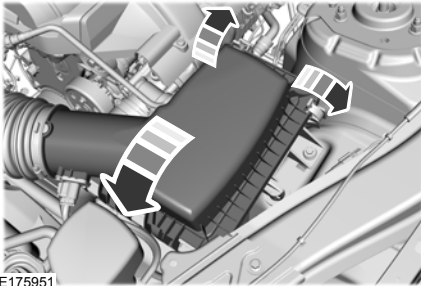
To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

Only use the specified replacement air filter.

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.



1. Release the two clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

4. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
6. Replace the air filter housing cover.
7. Engage the clamps to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

Track Use

WARNING



Track Apps™ is for track use only. Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It is always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

Track Apps™

This information display driven feature provides a suite of menu options to record and optimize your track performances. See **General Information** (page 66).

Note: *Track Apps™ are for track use only. Do not use them under any other driving conditions.*

Note: *You cannot view or clear your results unless your vehicle is at a complete stop with the right arrow on the display menu inactive. If your vehicle does not reach 160 km/h during the track run, your display may not show your selected interval's results.*

Note: *The pre-collision assist system turns off when using **Track Apps™** or when you switch off your stability control system.*

Acceleration Timer

Displays your vehicle's rate of acceleration for a given speed or distance range.

Brake Performance

Displays your vehicle's rate of deceleration for a given speed range.

Lap Timer

Gives you the ability to record lap times at three separate tracks.

Launch Control (If Equipped)

Maximizes your vehicle's traction from a standing start.

The use launch control, follow these steps:

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Make sure launch control is enabled. The indicator illuminates in the instrument display when launch control is enabled. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 63).
3. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
4. Shift the transmission into 1st gear.
5. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and allow the engine RPM to stabilize.
6. Release the clutch pedal.

Start Option

Allows you to select the type of countdown the information display shows before starting an event.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.*

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics (if Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa.
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C.
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Vehicle Care

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

Body Paintwork Preservation

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

Frequently wash the underbody of your vehicle if salt is applied on the road.

Note: Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.

Note: Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.

Note: Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

Note: Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Note: We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: Avoid soaking any surface. Do not use excessive amounts of water to clean the vehicle interior.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Seatbelts

WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: Do not steam clean.

Vehicle Care

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Do not spray any liquid directly onto the screens.

Do not use a microfiber cloth to clean the bezel around the display screens as it could damage the surface.

Rear Windows

Note: Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (if

Equipped)

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Note: Clean and treat spills as soon as possible. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

Note: Avoid soaking any surface.

Note: We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

Vehicle Care

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- Do not rub any stains into the leather.
- For perforated leather, do not use foam cleaning products.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

Note: Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

Note: If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

CLEANING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

Remove lint with a lint roller or a vacuum with a soft bristle brush.

For cloth and vinyl tops, wash with an approved high-quality convertible top cleaner and protectant.

Note: Do not use stiff bristle brushes, abrasive materials or household cleaning products.

Note: High-pressure water may cause water leaks and possible seal damage to the convertible top.

Vehicle Care

Note: *Do not fold the convertible top when it is wet.*

Note: *Avoid hot wax on vinyl materials during car washes.*

BODY STYLING KITS

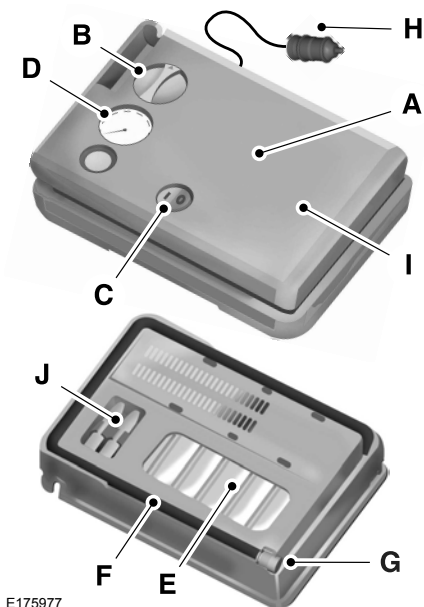
The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

Wheels and Tires

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT (If Equipped)

Note: The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized Ford dealer for replacement sealant canisters.

The kit is located under the load floor in the trunk. The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit provides a temporary tire repair, allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h to reach a tire service location.



- A Air compressor (inside).
- B Selector switch.
- C On and off button.
- D Air pressure gauge.
- E Sealant bottle and canister.
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair.
- G Tire valve connector.
- H Accessory power plug.
- I Casing/housing.
- J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters.

Wheels and Tires

General Information

WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Note: Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures located within the tire tread with the kit.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than ¼ inch (6 millimeters) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

Note: Do not drive the vehicle above 80 km/h.

Note: Do not drive further than 200 km. Drive only to the closest authorized Ford dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

Tips for Use of the Kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

- Read all instructions and cautions fully.
- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle does not move unexpectedly.

- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, leave the engine running (only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area) so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended during operation.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Those with latex sensitivities should use appropriate precautions to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C and 70°C.
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use-by date regularly and replace the canister after four years of non-use.
- Do not store the kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or crash. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, an authorized Ford dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD and DVD player operation.

Wheels and Tires



* When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air

position.

What to do When a Tire Is Punctured

You can repair a tire puncture within the tire's tread area in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, inflate the tire with a sealing compound and air. After you inflate the tire, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance 6 km to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air

WARNINGS



Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

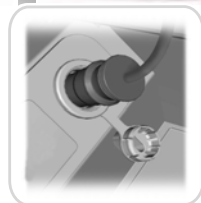
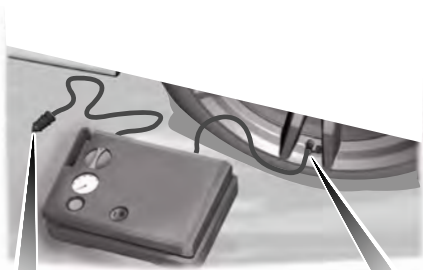
Preparation: Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Switch the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and switch the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

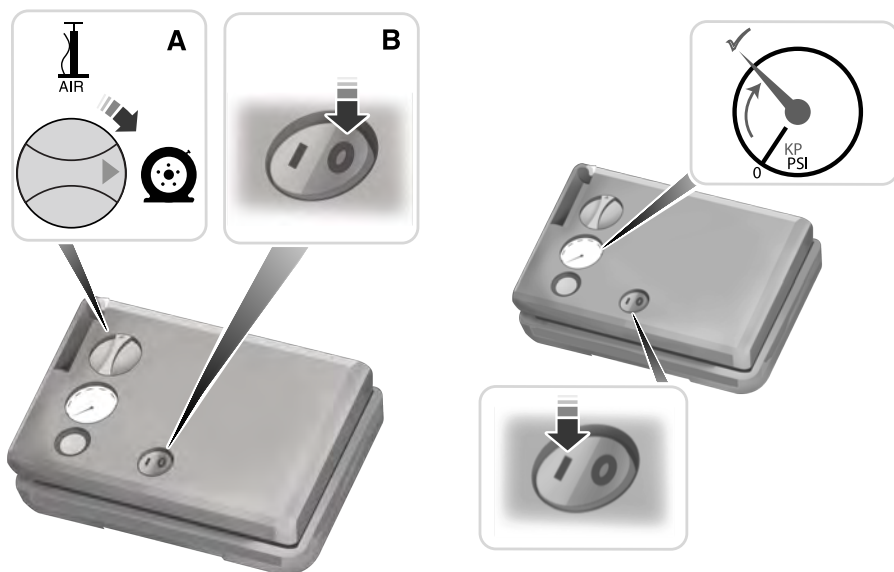
1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.
3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.



E200523

4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
6. Start the vehicle and leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.

Wheels and Tires



E175981

7. Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Switch the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).
8. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver's door or the door jamb area. The initial air pressure gauge reading may indicate a value higher than the label pressure while you pump the sealing compound into the tire. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure gauge reading will indicate the tire inflation pressure after about 30 seconds of operation. You should check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.

E175982

9. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure, switch off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the stowage area.
10. Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 6 km to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
11. After 6 km, stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

Wheels and Tires

Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Note: Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure

Note: If you are proceeding from the First Stage: Re-inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 1.4 bar, continue to the next step.

WARNING



The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



E175983

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.

4. If required, switch on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area. You should check the tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
5. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

What to Do After the Tire has Been Sealed

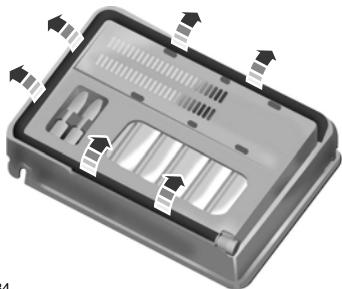
After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister. You can obtain sealant canisters and spare parts at an authorized Ford dealer. You can dispose of empty sealant canisters at home. However, you should dispose of canisters still containing liquid sealant through your local authorized Ford dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

Note: After you use the sealing compound, the maximum vehicle speed is 80 km/h and the maximum driving distance is 200 km. You should inspect the sealed tire immediately.

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 200 km by performing the steps listed previously in the Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure procedure.

Wheels and Tires

Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



E175984

1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



E175985

2. Unwrap the power cord.



E175986

3. Remove the back cover.



E175987

4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

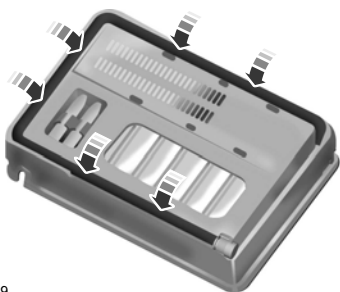
1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



E175988

3. Snap the back cover back into place.

Wheels and Tires



E175989

4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



E175990

5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug into its storage area.

Note: If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult an authorized Ford dealer for assistance.

Make sure you check the sealant compound's use-by date regularly. The use-by date is on a label located on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. You should replace the sealant canister after four years of non-use.

TIRE CARE

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

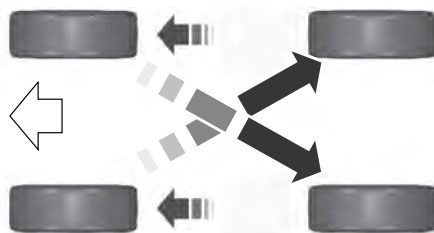
Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Rear-wheel drives vehicles (front tires at left of diagram).

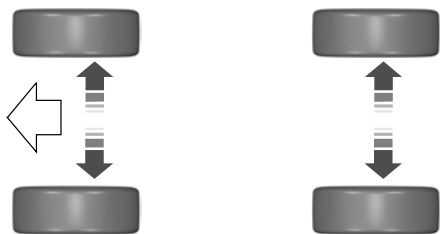
Non-directional tires



E142548

Vehicles equipped with different size tires on the front and rear axle

Wheels and Tires



E209823

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7°C or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7°C. The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7°C. If the tires have been subjected to -7°C or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5°C for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking

tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING



Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Note: *Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.*

The tires on your vehicle may have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. Use chains on the tires only in an emergency or if the law requires them.

Wheels and Tires

Note: *The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Chains may damage aluminum wheels.
- Use ultra low profile cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, with 255/40R19 on the rear axle only.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 275/40R19 tires.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions. The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front or the rear tires only.
- Do not exceed 50 km/h if recommended by the chain manufacturer while using snow chains.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: *You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it may not function.*



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate

Wheels and Tires

them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

Note: Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See **When Inflating Your Tires** in this chapter.

Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

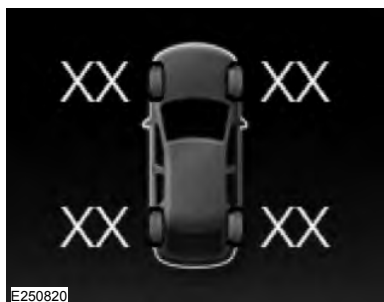
When changing the wheels of your vehicle, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to relearn the tire pressure sensors. To achieve this perform the following:

1. Make sure all tires are inflated to the proper pressure. If not, inflate the tires to the correct pressure.
2. Park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes.

Wheels and Tires

3. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** later in this section.
4. The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes above 40 km/h.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 66). The

low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

WARNING



Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

Wheels and Tires

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 14–28 kPa from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 21 kPa for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 69).
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL (if

Equipped)

WARNINGS



The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.



If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 195).

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

Wheels and Tires

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 195). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h.
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 113 km/h.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

Wheels and Tires

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

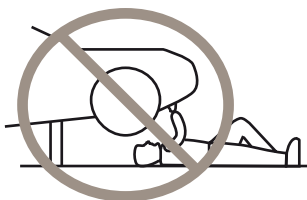
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Vehicle Jack (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

-  Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.
-  The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.
-  Switch the ignition off and apply park brake fully before lifting vehicle.
-  It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.
-  No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
-  **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



E166722

WARNING

 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency."

Note: **If applicable to the type of jack used (for example, pantograph (scissor) jack).*

Note: ***If equipped. Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or lug nut wrench.*

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

-  Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
-  Make sure that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.
-  If your vehicle has a manual transmission, move the selector lever to first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, move the selector lever to park (P).
-  Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
-  Making sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

Wheels and Tires

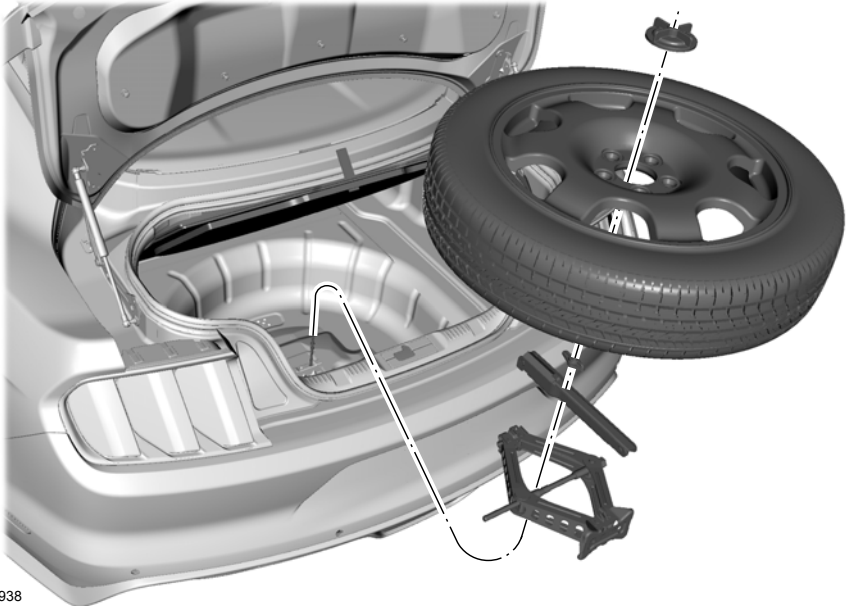
WARNINGS



Never place anything between the

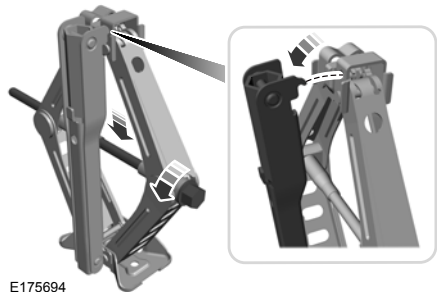
WARNINGS

vehicle jack and your vehicle.



E174938

1. Remove the lug wrench, spare tire and jack.
2. Remove the center ornament from the wheel if required to access the lug nuts.

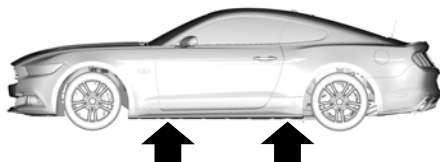


E175694

3. To remove the wrench from the jack, turn the hex nut on the jack counterclockwise. This will lower the jack and loosen the mechanical lock.

Wheels and Tires

- Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



E176084

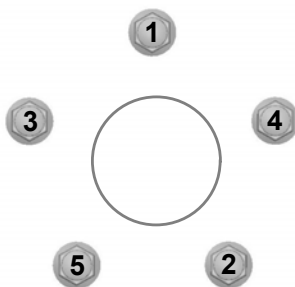
- The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and can be identified by the triangle markings on the vehicle. Details are depicted on the warning label on the jack.



E174939

- Place the jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.
- Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

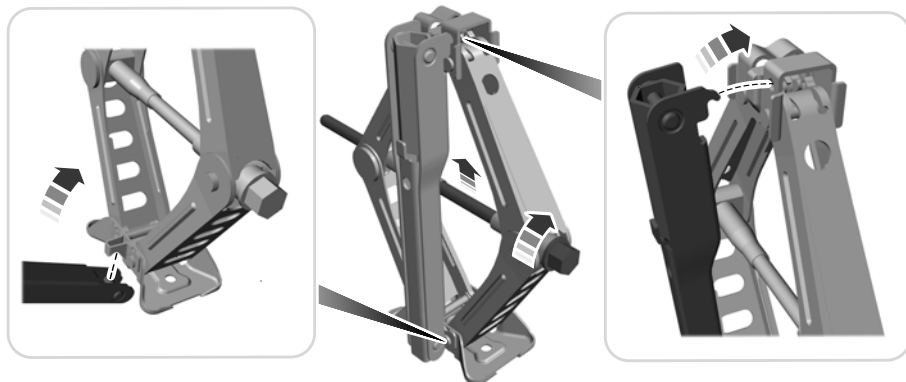
- Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered. If you are using the temporary tire, the lug nut washers will not appear to be flush with the rim. This is normal only when using the temporary spare tire.
- Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

- Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 205).
- To store the folded wrench on the jack, engage the bracket of the jack base on the wrench feature as shown. Swing the wrench upwards and adjust the height of the jack until the pin engages the hole. Tighten the hex nut clockwise by hand until secure.

Wheels and Tires



E176165

12. Put the flat tire, wheel ornament, jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
13. Unblock the wheel.

DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED

Tire pressure - Speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h)

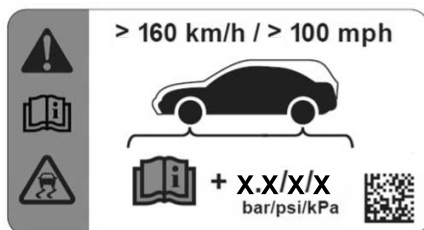
WARNING



To reduce the risk of potential tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death, increase the front and rear tire placard pressures by the amount shown on the warning label, located on either the driver side B-pillar or door, when driving over 160 km/h. Only travel at speeds over 160 km/h where it is legal and conditions allow. The tire placard pressure can be found on the tire placard located on either the driver side B-pillar or door of your vehicle.



Warning: Failure to follow these instructions can result in a loss of vehicle stability due to tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death. If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressures, contact an authorized dealer or service center.



E184089

Your tires may require additional inflation pressure for operation at speeds greater than 160 km/h. If this label is present on your vehicle, you must adjust the tire pressure accordingly.

Wheels and Tires

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Nut Torque

Wheel type	lb-ft (Nm)
All	204 Nm

Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

Spare Tire

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
Temporary spare wheel when it differs from the other fitted wheels	155/60R18	4.2 bar	4.2 bar	4.2 bar	4.2 bar

Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
2.3L EcoBoost	255/40ZR19*	2.2 bar	2.2 bar	2.2 bar	2.2 bar
5.0L	255/40ZR19*	2.2 bar	-	2.2 bar	-
	275/40ZR19	-	2.2 bar	-	2.2 bar

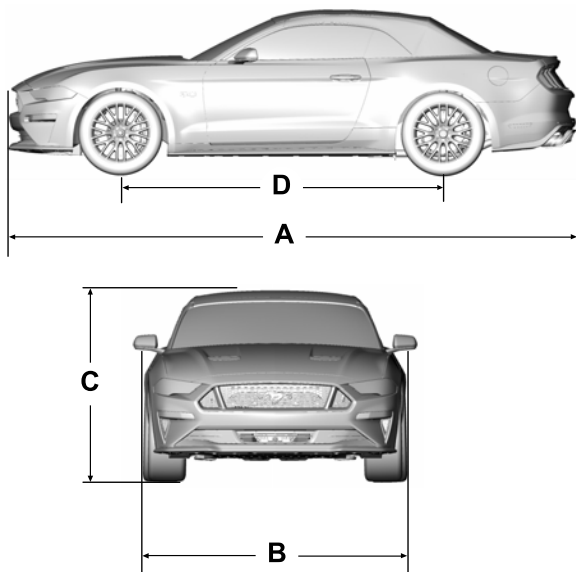
*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
2.3L EcoBoost	255/40ZR19	2.2 bar	2.2 bar	2.2 bar	2.2 bar
5.0L	255/40ZR19	2.2 bar	-	2.2 bar	-
	275/40ZR19	-	2.2 bar	-	2.2 bar

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - CONVERTIBLE

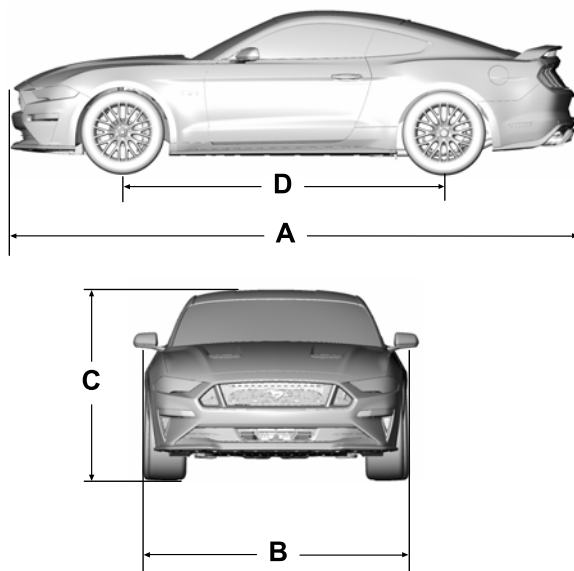


E255203

Item	Dimension	Specification
A	Overall length.	4,789 mm
B	Overall width excluding exterior mirrors.	1,916 mm
C	Overall height without options.	1,387 mm
D	Wheel base	2,720 mm

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - COUPE



E255204

Item	Dimension	Specification
A	Overall length.	4,789 mm
B	Overall width excluding exterior mirrors.	1,916 mm
C	Overall height without options.	1,378 mm
D	Wheel base	2,720 mm

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

Note: The label with your vehicle built date is located on the bottom of the lock side of the driver's door aperture.

Note: Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

Note: The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.



E219357

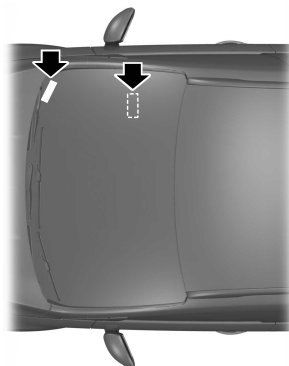
A Built Date

Built Date

Built Date means the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.

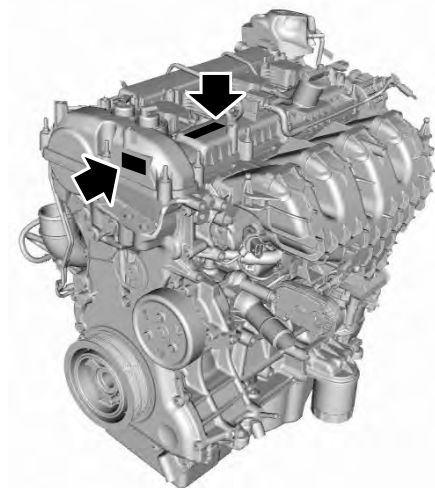


E224201

The Vehicle Identification Number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the drivers seat. It is also viewable at the bottom of the windscreen on the drivers side.

Capacities and Specifications

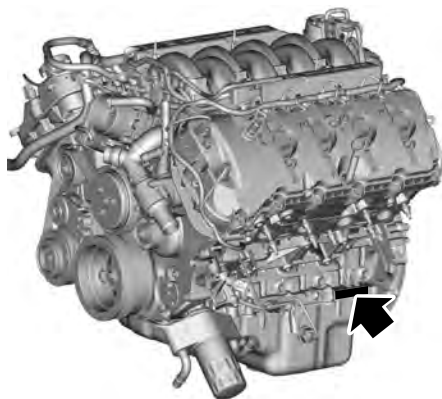
2.3L EcoBoost Engine



E184282

The engine number can also be found in several locations on the engine.

5.0L Engine



E208045

The engine number will be located on the left-hand side of the engine, at the bottom pan rail edge toward the rear of the engine.

Audio System

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.*

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 12 cm audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

Audio System

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

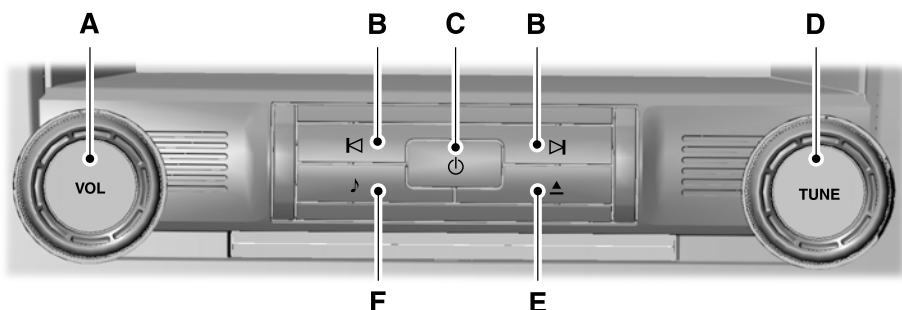
AUDIO UNIT

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*



E248781

Audio System

- A **VOL:** Turn to adjust the volume.
- B **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a radio station and press this button. The system stops at the next strongest station. Press and hold to move quickly to the next strong radio station or memory preset. In CD mode, press to select the next or previous track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.
- C **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off.
- D **TUNE:** Turn to search through the radio frequency band.
- E **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- F **Sound:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.

DIGITAL RADIO

General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

Note: Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

Note: When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.

Selecting Radio Band

DAB 1, DAB 2 and DAB 3 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB 1**, **DAB 2** or **DAB 3**.

Note: When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.

Radio Station Tuning Controls

Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the browse button.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow buttons to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Audio System

Note: The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.

Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Press the tune buttons. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 6 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

Note: Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select the radio text on feature in the options menu.

Note: Extra information may not always be available.

Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display.

Note: If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.

Note: The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.

Note: The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.

USB PORT

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E201595

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See your SYNC information.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

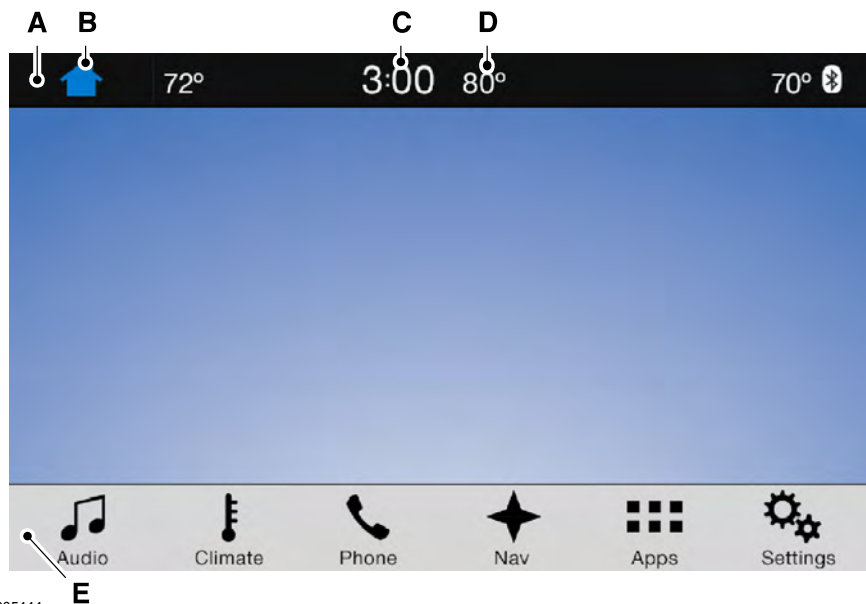
Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth-enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, climate control, navigation, and your phone's SYNC 3 compatible apps.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.



E205444

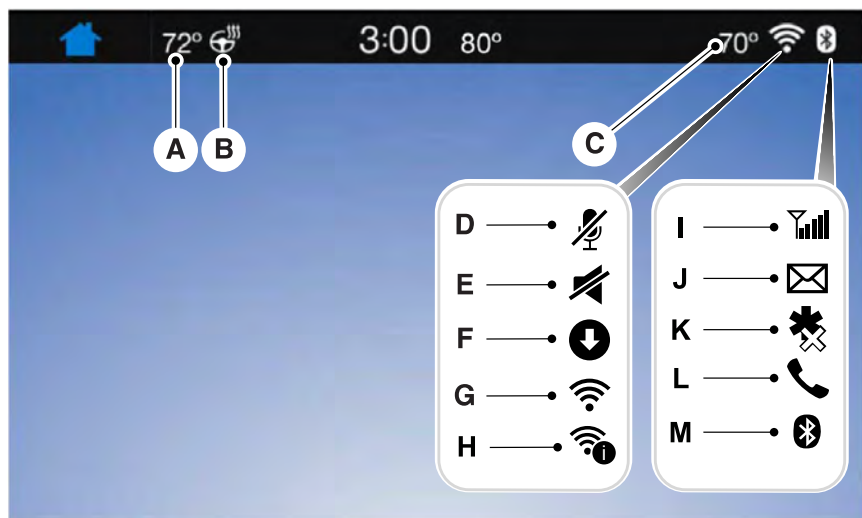
Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See Settings (page 255).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.



E249671

Callout	Item	Description
A	Driver Temperature	This shows the temperature the driver selects through the climate control system.
B	Heated steering wheel (If equipped)	When you activate the heated steering wheel option on the touch screen, this icon displays. It only displays when there is not a physical button for the heated steering wheel.
C	Passenger Temperature	When the passenger adjusts their temperature, it turns on dual and displays here, indicating it is not linked to the driver's temperature. When the temperatures link up again, the passenger's temperature does not display.
D	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
E	Mute	This icon displays when you mute the audio system.

SYNC™ 3

Callout	Item	Description
F	Software Update	This icon appears when the system receives a software update. Pressing the icon shows more details about the new software.
G	Wi-Fi	This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.
H	Wi-Fi in Range	An available Wi-Fi network is within range.
I	Signal Strength	This icon displays the phone and roaming signal strength.
J	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.
K	Emergency Assistance (If equipped)	This icon displays when you set Emergency Assistance to off and you connect your phone to SYNC.
L	In Call	This icon displays when a phone call is active.
M	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM, FM and satellite radio, CDs, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Climate	Allows you to adjust the temperature, fan speed and airflow within the vehicle.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Navigation (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iPhone or Android device. Also, access built-in additional features such as SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if equipped).
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 227).

Using the Controls on the Steering Wheel

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Mute: Mute the audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: On some models, **SEEK NEXT** may be combined with **PHONE REJECT** and **SEEK PREVIOUS** may be combined with **PHONE ACCEPT**.

M: Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media sources (modes).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 48).

Using the Controls on the Bezel

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio.
- **Seek** and **Tune:** Use as you normally would in audio modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system.
- **SOURCE** or **MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes.
- **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings.
- **1-6:** Press and hold to store or press to select an AM, FM or SIRIUS memory preset. See **Audio System** (page 210).

- **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control buttons:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system. See **Climate Control** (page 79).

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.



For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.

Note: Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

Note: When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.

Note: Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact local emergency services through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 20). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 149). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 255).

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.

- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: This feature only works in a region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

In the Event of a Crash

Note: Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial local emergency services.

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial local emergency services.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

Note: During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

Note: It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

Note: It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

Note: The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

Safety Information

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 5 km/h. Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following table for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
Functionality of the System	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi and Wireless	Editing wireless settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network that requires a secure code to be entered via the keyboard.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

Creating a SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports on the media hub and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

Please reference website for any further actions.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 255). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 266).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

Customer Assistance

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

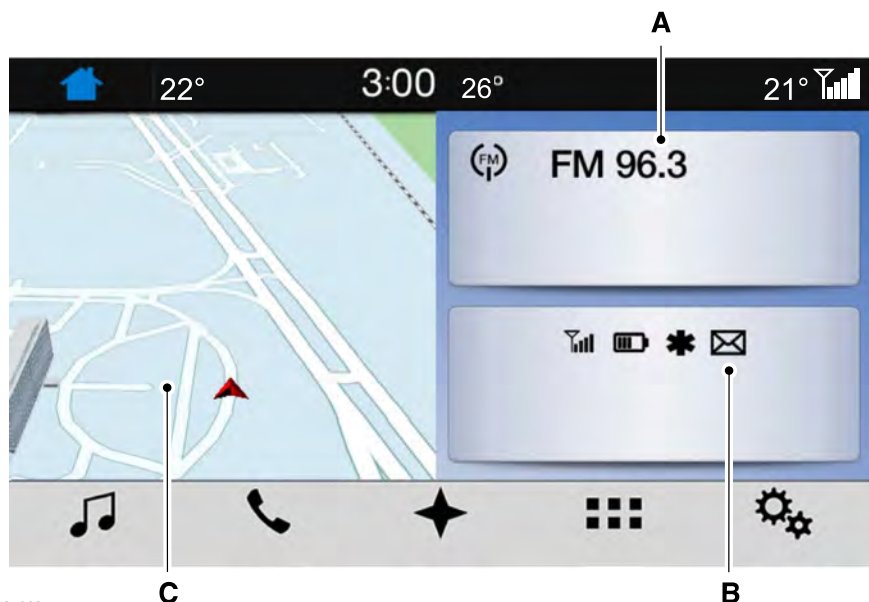
Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 255). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

HOME SCREEN



E224962

Item	Title	Home screen display
A	Audio	Shows the active media source. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.
B	Phone	The name of the connected phone appears on the screen. The status of the phone features also appear. This includes signal strength, battery charge, text messaging and roaming.
C	Navigation *	This map displays your current location or current route in real time. When you have navigation active, you also see the next turn and the length of time and distance to your destination. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the audio information.

* If equipped.

You can touch any of the feature displays to access that feature.

Anytime you select the home button, the system returns you to this screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Sirius Channel ____ ¹	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16".
You can also turn to a Sirius channel by saying the channel's name, such as "The Pulse".	
AM ____ FM ____	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "FM 88.7" or "AM 1580".
FM ____ HD ____ ¹	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as "FM 88.7 HD 1".
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ____ Play Playlist ____ Play Artist ____ Play Album ____ Play Podcast ____ Play Song ____ Play Audiobook ____	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".
Browse ____	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

¹ This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

Climate Voice Commands

You can control the temperature of the vehicle using voice commands.

____ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for climate voice commands it can be the desired degrees for the temperature setting.

To adjust the temperature, say:

Voice command	Description
Set Temperature ____	Adjust the temperature between 15.5–29.5°C.

Phone Voice Commands

Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth enabled phone to the system.

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See Settings (page 255).

Making Calls

____ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ____	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ____ at ____	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ____	Allows you to dial a specific number such as "Dial 867-5309".

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ____	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality. You can also search for an address in a specific state or province.
Find a ____	State the name of the POI category or major brand name you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find a POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.

____ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or a major brand name, where major brand name is a chain with more than 20 locations

SYNC™ 3

Voice command	Description
Find an Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Find the Nearest <POI Category>	State the name of a POI category or major brand name you would like to search for.
Show Previous Destinations	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Show Favorites	Allows you to see a list of your favorite destinations.
Drive Home	Allows you to route to your home address.
Drive to Work	Allows you to route to your work address.

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Displays the active route.
Route Summary	Displays the list of upcoming maneuvers.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

SYNC™ 3

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:

Voice command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Call Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.

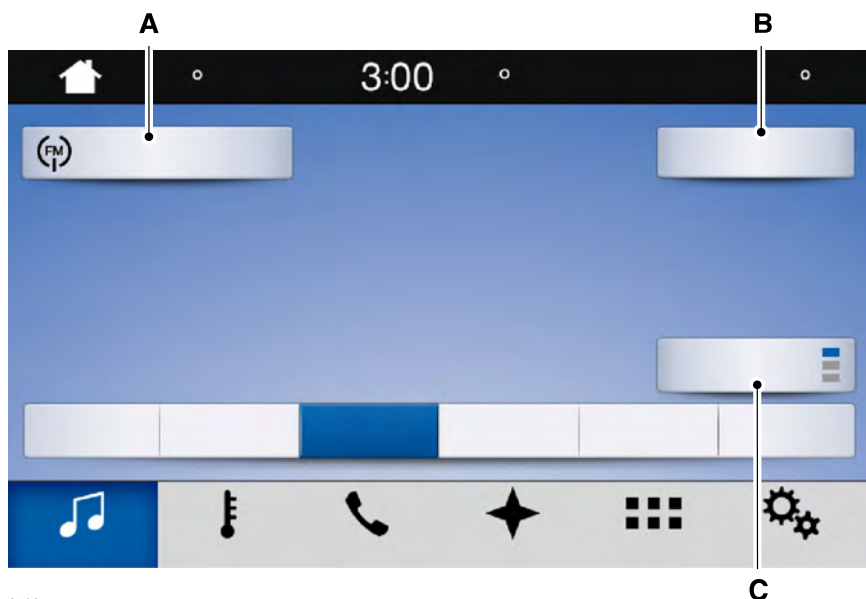
Voice command	Description
Call Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

Note: Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

ENTERTAINMENT



E242502

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Message	Message and description
A	Sources
B	Direct Tune
C	Presets

Menu item
AM
FM
CD

Menu item	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

AM/FM Radio

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

CD

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artist
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audiobooks
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

USB Port



E201595

The USB port is in the center console or on the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as Pandora or iHeartRadio through a USB or Bluetooth enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 253).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

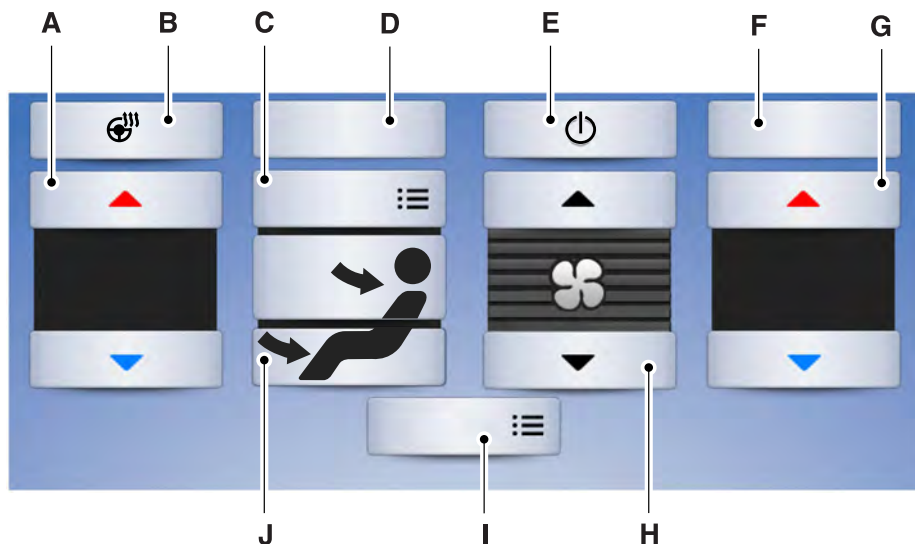
If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from one of the screens shown below. Your screen may not contain all of the features shown.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 255).*



E224964

Callout	Item	Description	
A	Left-hand front seat temperature:	Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.	
B	Heated steering wheel:	Touch the heated steering wheel icon to switch the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).	
C	Defrost	A pop up appears on the screen to display the defrost options.	
		MAX Defrost:	Touch the button to maximize defrosting. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed and the temperature dial returns to the

Callout	Item	Description	
			full heat position. You can use this setting to defog or clear a thin covering of ice from the windshield. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select MAX Defrost.
		Defrost	Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when Defrost is on.
D	AUTO	Touch the button to switch on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature.	
E	Power	Touch the button to switch the system on and off. Switching off the climate control system prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.	
F	DUAL	This button lights up when the passenger controls are active. To switch the dual zone operation off and link the passenger temperature to the driver temperature, touch the DUAL button to switch it off.	
G	Right-hand front seat temperature	Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.	
H	Fan speed:	Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle.	
I	A/C	A popup appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.	

Callout	Item	Description	
		MAX A/C	Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
		A/C	Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost
		Recirculated air:	Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when you select MAX A/C. You can engage this manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C to reduce fog potential.
J	Manual airflow distribution controls:	Select these controls individually, together or with Defrost to direct the air flow to the area you desire.	
	Panel:	Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.	
	Floor:	Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.	

PHONE

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add a Bluetooth Device

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.

4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add a Bluetooth Device
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

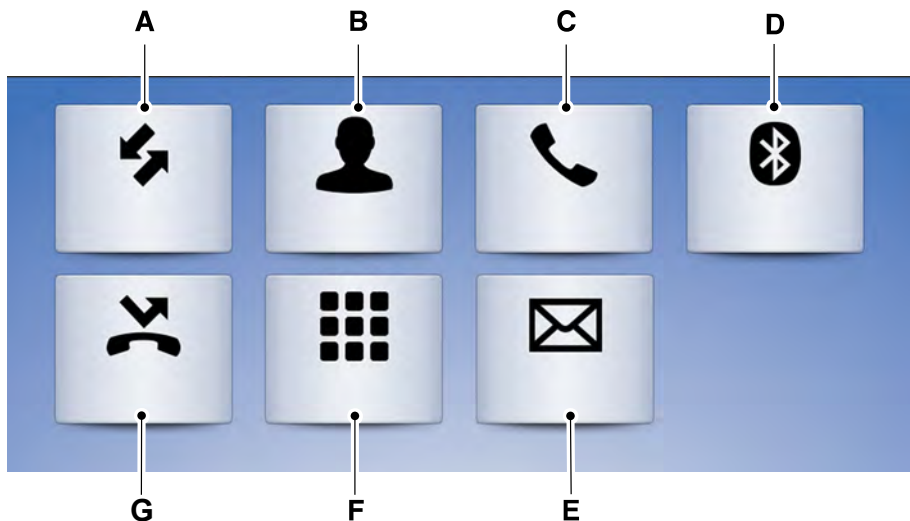
At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.



E251249

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	

SYNC™ 3

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts.	
D	Change Device	Gives you access to the list of paired or connected Bluetooth devices allowing you to change or select a device.	
E	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.	
F	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.	
		Call	Press this button to begin a call.
G	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to reject all incoming calls automatically. Text message notifications do not display on the screen. All ringtones and alerts are set to silent.	

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 227). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.

Item	
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

Note: Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 km/h.

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the sender name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 213).

- Follow the prompts on the touchscreen.
- Follow the prompts that appear on your phone to allow access to Apple CarPlay.

After completing the setup, your phone connects to CarPlay automatically when plugged into a USB port.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

- Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

Note: The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.

- Plug your device into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 213).
- Follow the prompt on the touchscreen.
- Follow the prompts that appear on your device.

Note: You may be prompted to update additional apps on your device (this may require mobile data usage).

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

Note: You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select **Apple CarPlay Preferences** or **Android Auto Preferences**.

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: Contact Google for Android Auto support.

NAVIGATION

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Map Mode

Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of 2D city maps, 3D landmarks and 3D city models (when available). 2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use, landscape features, and detailed railroad infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourism value.

3D city models are complete 3D models of entire city areas including navigable roads, parks, rivers and rendered buildings. 3D landmarks and city models appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage of these varies and improves with updated map releases.



Select the zoom in icon to see a closer view of the map.



Select the zoom out icon to see a farther away view of the map.

You can adjust the view in preset increments. You can also pinch to zoom in or out of the map.

The information bar tells you the names of streets, cities or landmarks as you hover over them with the crosshair cursor.

You can change your view of the map by tapping on the location indicator icon on the right hand side of the screen. You can choose from the following options:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 5 km.



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. Adjust this viewing angle and rotate the map 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and

then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.



Mute: Press to mute the audio navigation guidance. Press the button again to un-mute the guidance.



Points of Interest (POI)

grouping icon: You can choose up to three POI icons to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are located close together or are

at the same location a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.

You can choose to display traffic icons on the map representing twelve different types of incidents. See **Settings** (page 255).

You can set a destination by hovering above a location and selecting:

Button
Start

Destination Mode

To set a destination, press:

Menu Item	Description	
Destination		
Enter a navigation destination in any of the following formats:		
Search	Street Address (number, street, city, state) For example "12 Mainstreet Dearborn MI"	
	Partial Address (number, street) (number, street and postal code)	
	City (name or zip code)	
	Point of Interest (name or category)	
	Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)	
	Latitude and Longitude (###.##### , ##.#####) This is in a decimal degrees format, one to six decimal places are accepted.	
	You are given autocomplete options below the address bar to select as you type. If you do not give an exact destination, a menu displays with your possible selections.	
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination.	
	Delete All	Select this option to remove all previous destinations.

SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Description	
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press:	
	Home	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work:	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	Hotel	
	ATM	
	See All	Press to view additional categories.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	

SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Description
	Along Route
	Near Destination
	In a City

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.	
Start	This shows you a map of your entire route. You can then choose from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance.
	Eco	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
	The time and distance for each route also displays.	
Cancel	On the route screen, you can choose to cancel the current navigation.	

Once you have chosen you destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	The system uses a variety of screens and prompts to guide you to your destination. During Route guidance, you can press the maneuver arrow icon on the map if you want the system to repeat route guidance instructions. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects that the vehicle is moving. The navigation map shows your estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time and the distance to your destination. SYNC 3 may not always announce vehicle arrival at the exact point of your destination and you may have to cancel a route manually.

Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
You can then select:		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.
	Highway Exit Info	
	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:
		Avoid
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See Settings (page 255).	
Where Am I?	Provides your current location city and the nearest road.	
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:		
Cancel Route	The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen.	
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.	
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.	
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See Waypoints later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.	

Button		
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.	
	You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
	To return to your route press:	Go

Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, the screen allows you to set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

Menu Item	
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location. You can select up to five waypoints.
You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
To return to your route, press:	Go

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smartphone apps. When an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.

Note: You must pair and connect your smartphone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.

Note: iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port via an Apple authorized cable.

Note: Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will automatically work with no setup. Other apps want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle in a safe location.

Note: We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data.

Note: AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through AppLink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.

Note: In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the App needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.

Note: If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service, troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and services that may interest you where allowed by law.

Note: You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.

Note: Ford reserves the right to limit functionality or deactivate mobile apps at any time.

Note: Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any extra charges you incur from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges you incur due to driving out of range of your home network.

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 255).

App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can individually grant these group permissions. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.

Note: If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB

device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Gracenote® Management	Switches on an off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album.		
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.		
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.		
Update Media Index	Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index.		

Clock

You can adjust the following features:

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all devices and does not permit new connections.

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. See **To add a phone** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.

6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit your regional Ford website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Make Favorite	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Pressing the info icon next to the device name allows you to see phone and device information.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Manage Contacts		
You can then select:		
Auto Phonebook Download	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.	
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:	
	<table> <tr> <td>First Name</td> <td>Last Name</td> </tr> </table>	First Name
First Name	Last Name	
Re-download Phonebook	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Phone-book	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Message Notification	
You can then select:	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

Note: The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature only operates in territories that are supporting the feature.

Select this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Emergency Contacts	You can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phone-book as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
FM HD Radio AM HD Radio (Dependent on current radio source, if equipped and available)	Activation of this feature allows you to listen to HD radio broadcasts.
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.
News Announcements	
Regional	
Alternate frequency	

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs
Incident Map Icons	This menu allows you to choose which incident icons you would like to have displayed on the navigation map.	

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ____ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		
Avoid Traffic Problems	You can select the following to have the system:		
	Avoid Freeways	Avoid Toll Roads	Avoid Ferries/Car Trains

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
Then select any of the following:	
Voice and Tones	
Voice Only	
Tones Only	

Mobile Apps (If Equipped)

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected devices sends data to Ford in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: All Mobile Apps may not be compatible with the system.

Note: Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mobile Apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.
	You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.
Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:	
Update Mobile Apps	This provides information on the current state of available app updates.
	There are three possible statuses:

SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description		
	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...
	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.
	Request Update		Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select: Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.		
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.		

Note: Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.

General

You can adjust the following:

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in one of the selectable languages.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Screen Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.

SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.
About SYNC	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi

You can adjust the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
View Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to switch on ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all of these features.*

You can select the following features to update their settings.

Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Rear Camera Delay (if equipped)	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.
Enhanced Park Aids (if equipped)	

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner manual.

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description						
Display Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.						
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.						
Mode	You can select: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Auto</td><td>The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Day</td><td>The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Night</td><td>The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.</td></tr> </table>	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.						
Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.						
Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.						
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.						

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contact's name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop-up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system is locked and you cannot remember the PIN, please contact the Customer Relationship Center.*

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to the regional Ford or Lincoln website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC 3 phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.

SYNC™ 3

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
	iPhone	- Go to your cell phone's Settings. - Go to the Bluetooth Menu. - Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu. - Turn Show Notifications on. - Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
	The device is in a bad state.	Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.

SYNC™ 3

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues

Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format. See Entertainment (page 233).
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See Settings (page 255).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.
SYNC 3 does not display the song information, repeat, or shuffle buttons.	The device or media player is incompatible.	Connect a compatible device or media player.

Wi-Fi Issues

Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.

SYNC™ 3

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

SYNC™ 3

Wi-Fi Issues

Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot.
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find Mobile Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an AppLink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smart-phone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Find Mobile Apps" on SYNC 3.
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.

SYNC™ 3

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
	The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone-book.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press PHONE . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

Personal Profiles	
Issue	Possible cause and solution
I cannot create a profile.	Personal Profiles have not been set up.
	An invalid profile name was entered.
	A memory button was not selected when prompted.
	The vehicle's ignition was not On and in Park or was shifted out of Run or Park while creating a profile.
	Personal Profiles is turned off.
I cannot link a keyfob.	The lock button was not selected on a keyfob when prompted.
	The keyfob selected was already associated to another profile and an overwrite was declined.
	A profile recall was performed while linking a keyfob.
	The vehicle's ignition was not On and in Park, or was shifted out of Run or Park while linking a keyfob.
	The old linking method is used.
My personalized settings do not save.	The unsaved setting is not supported by Personal Profiles.
	A different Personal Profile is active than expected.
	Another user has changed settings for the wrong Personal Profile.
My profile will not recall.	A Personal Profile has not been created.
	Personal Profiles is turned off.
	The requested profile is already active.
	The memory button being used is not linked to a profile.

SYNC™ 3

Personal Profiles	
Issue	Possible cause and solution
	The keyfob being used is not linked to a profile.
	The wrong keyfob is being used.
	A button other than unlock or remote start is being pressed on a linked keyfob.
	The Personal Profile was deleted.
My preset positions recall but my profile does not.	Personal Profiles is turned off.
My profile recalls but my preset positions do not.	The vehicle is in motion.
	The preset positions are the same as the Guest or previously active profile.
I lost a keyfob.	Unlink and relink your keyfob in the Personal Profiles menu. You may need to see your authorized dealer.
I lost all profiles.	Keyfobs had been erased and reprogramed. This could happen if you let dealership add a new keyfob to replace lost one.
	Master Reset had been performed without your acknowledgement.

SYNC™ 3

General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting, refer to the regional Ford or Lincoln website.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

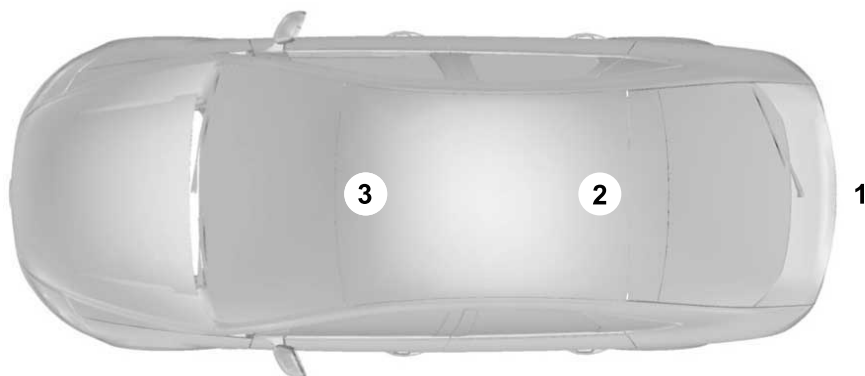


Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.

Car

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation (UNECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements.

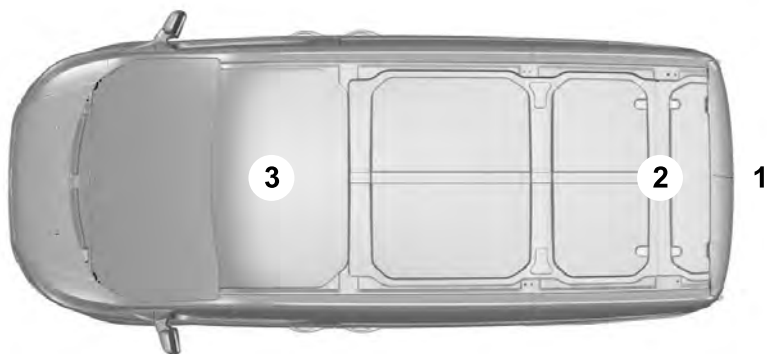
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following table. We do not provide special provisions or conditions for installations or use.



E239120

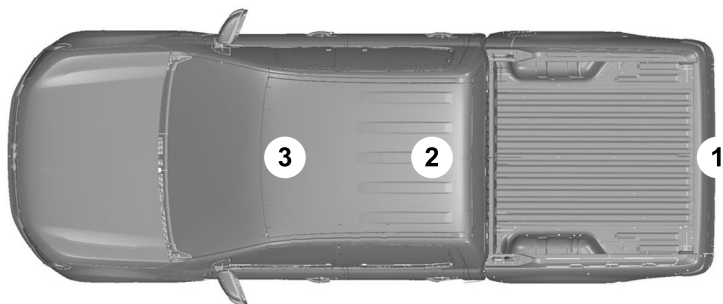
Appendices

Van



E239122

Truck



E239121

Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

Appendices

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.
- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

Appendices

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages:

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Appendices

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Appendices

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

Appendices

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

Appendices

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

Appendices

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

Appendices

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

Appendices

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

Appendices

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

Appendices

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Appendices

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

Appendices

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

Appendices

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. **Disclaimer and Limitation:** Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. **Disclaimer:** The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. **Limitation on Liability:** The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. **Copyright Notice:** In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. **End-User Terms:** Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

Appendices

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data. End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice

Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"

Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

Appendices

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice

Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l’Équipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

Appendices

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

Appendices

Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelmatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

Appendices

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

Appendices

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

Appendices

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

Appendices

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

Appendices

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intellematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

Appendices

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Appendices

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at emcteam@schrader.co.uk

E207818

European Union EU

NCA APPROVED: 3R88M14030

E253824

Ghana

Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre pressure sensor
Model : AG2SZ4
Manufacturer:Schrader Electronics Ltd
Type Approval Number:TRC/LPD/2014/56
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E253823

Jordan



E253822

Malaysia

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238

E253812

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1249

E253813

TYPE APPROVALS

Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)

Schrader AG2SZ4 Numero de Registro
CNC: H-13498

E207816

Argentina



E197509

Brazil

Appendices

Mexico



1 0 2 4

E197811

Moldova

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

E207821

Morocco

OMAN TRA

TA-R/1752/14

E253817

D090258

Oman



Type Approved

NTC

No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

Philippines

EAC

E253816

Russia



1 0 1 1 1 4

E197844

Serbia

Complies with
IDA Standards
DA 105282

E253820

Singapore



TA-2014/064

Approved

E198002

South Africa



E253819

MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2SZ4

South Korea

Appendices

Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Mid Range Radar



CCAM14LP0090T3

E203679

Taiwan



E253818

109

Ukraine

TRA
REGISTERED NO:ER0I30238/14
DEALER NO:DA0047074/10

E207817

United Arab Emirates

MMR ID: C-20001

E269659

Argentina

MRR ID:
NCA approved: 0R2-9H-7E1-x4D.

E269662

Ghana

MRR:
Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2017/158
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD) ID: C-20001

E269660

Jordan

Appendices

Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Passive Anti-Theft System

MRR ID:
No. D'Agrement: MR 13639 ANRT 2017 (28 March 2017)

E269661

Morocco



E269675

Brazil

MRR ID:
TA-2017/370

E269664

South Africa

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: NCA/TA/16/22

E269674

Ghana

MRR ID:
ER54071/17, Dealer License Number (WAC Dealer License Number: DA37380/15)

E269663

United Arab Emirates

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2013/235
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E269666

Jordan

Appendices



E269673

Malaysia



I011 16-3

E269672

Serbia

N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 8922 ANRT 2014

E269670

Morocco

Complies with IDA standards
Dealer License Number: N3226-13

E269676

Singapore



TAC NO: 14.1009/2015

E269669

Pakistan

TA-2013/1617

APPROVED



E269667

South Africa

Appendices

ID No. 1O094.004449-16



E269671

Ukraine

TRA
REGISTERED No. ER49115/16

E269668

United Arab Emirates

So.No: A0364120416AF04A2



E269677

Vietnam

Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Radio Transceiver Module

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 247/MCPT/SC/16
Date d'agrément: 23/05/2016

E272192

Djibouti

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – F03-AM315RX

E272193

Jamaica

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2013/233
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

E272194

Jordan

Appendices

N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 12432 ANRT 2016

E269683

Morocco



И011 16

E269681

Serbia



TAC NO: 14.1008/2015

E269684

Pakistan

TA-2013/1618
APPROVED



E269685

South Africa



NR: 2012-11-1-0189

E272195

Paraguay



UA.TR.028

E269682

Ukraine

Appendices

TRA REGISTERED No. ER46324/16
DEALER No.: DA37380/15

E272196

United Arab Emirates

**Radio Frequency Certification
Logos for Blind Spot Information
System**

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

E269695

Ghana



E269697

Malaysia

TA-2015/444
APPROVED



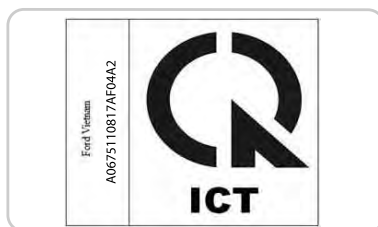
E269696

South Africa

TRA
REGISTERED No. ER39534/15
DEALER No.: DA37380/15

E269694

United Arab Emirates

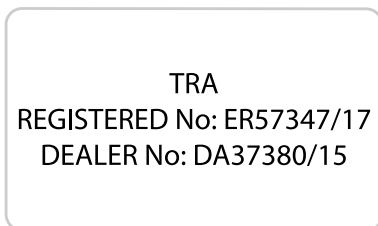


E269693

Vietnam

Appendices

Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Wireless Charging



E272903

United Arab Emirates

Radio Frequency Certification Logos for SYNC 3



E252722

Brazil

Index

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	79
About This Manual.....	5
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	111
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	111
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	8
ACC	
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	123
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	176
Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....	177
Vertical Aim.....	176
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	48
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	79
Air Filter	
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	180
Air Vents.....	79
Center Air Vents.....	79
Side Air Vents.....	79
Alarm	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	44
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	46
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	47
Ambient Lighting.....	57
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:	
Integral Battery.....	44
Alarm System.....	44
Arming the Alarm.....	46
Disarming the Alarm.....	46
Full and Reduced Guard.....	45
Triggering the Alarm.....	45
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	46
Alarm System.....	46
Arming the Alarm.....	47
Disarming the Alarm.....	47
Full and Reduced Guard.....	46
Triggering the Alarm.....	46

Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:	
Perimeter Alarm.....	47
Arming the Alarm.....	47
Disarming the Alarm.....	47
Appendices.....	280
Apps.....	253
.....	253
At a Glance.....	10
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	65
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	65
Keyless Warning Alert.....	65
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	65
Audio Control.....	48
Seek, Next or Previous.....	48
Audio System.....	210
General Information.....	210
Audio Unit.....	211
Autolamps.....	54
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....	54
Automatic Climate Control.....	79
Automatic High Beam Control.....	55
Automatic High Beam Indicator.....	56
Switching the System On and Off.....	56
Automatic Transmission.....	105
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....	108
Brake-Shift Interlock.....	107
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....	108
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission.....	106
Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission.....	105
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	172
Autowipers.....	51
Autowipers Settings.....	52
Auxiliary Power Points.....	90
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	90
230 Volt AC Power Point.....	90
Locations.....	90

B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	173
Body Styling Kits.....	186

Index

Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	164
Brake Fluid Check.....	172
Brakes.....	111
General Information.....	111
Breaking-In.....	146
Brakes and Clutch.....	146
Engine.....	146
Tires.....	146
Bulb Specification Chart.....	178

C

Cabin Air Filter.....	82
Capacities and Specifications.....	206
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	182
Catalytic Converter.....	103
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	103
Center Console.....	92
Locking Storage Bin.....	92
Changing a Bulb.....	177
LED Lamps.....	177
Rear Fog Lamp.....	178
Reversing Lamp.....	178
Changing a Fuse.....	162
Fuses.....	162
Changing a Road Wheel.....	199
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly	
Information.....	200
Removing a Road Wheel.....	201
Vehicle Jack.....	201
Changing the 12V Battery.....	173
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	174
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	180
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	175
Changing the Windshield Wiper	
Blades.....	176
Service Position.....	175
Checking MyKey System Status.....	36
Checking Seatbelt Fit.....	16
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	175
Child Restraint Anchorage	
Locations.....	14
Upper (top tether) anchorages.....	14
Child Restraints.....	12
Child Safety.....	12
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	184

Cleaning the Convertible Top.....	185
Cleaning the Exterior.....	182
Body Paintwork Preservation.....	183
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	182
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	182
Cleaning the Headlamps.....	182
Cleaning the Rear Window.....	182
Cleaning the Interior.....	183
Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners	
and Floor Mats.....	183
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens	
and Radio Screens.....	184
Leather Interior.....	183
Rear Windows.....	184
Seatbelts.....	183
Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and	
Ashtrays.....	184
Suede Micro Fiber Fabric.....	183
Cleaning the Wheels.....	185
Clearing All MyKeys.....	35
Climate.....	238
Climate Control.....	79
Climate Controlled Seats.....	88
Cooled Seats.....	89
Heated Seats.....	88
Closing the Convertible Top.....	144
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual	
Transmission.....	173
Cold Weather Precautions.....	147
Convertible Top.....	143
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	168
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	25
Creating a MyKey.....	34
Programming/Changing Configurable	
Settings.....	34
Cruise Control.....	49
Principle of Operation.....	123
Cup Holders.....	92

D

Data Recording.....	7
Daytime Running Lamps.....	55
Digital Radio.....	212
General Information.....	212
Direction Indicators.....	57
Doors and Locks.....	38

Index

Drive Control.....	139	Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	60
Selectable Drive Modes.....	139	Power Exterior Mirrors.....	59
Selectable Steering.....	140	Power-Folding Mirrors.....	59
Driver Airbag.....	20	Signal Indicator Mirrors.....	60
Driver Alert.....	129		
Using Driver Alert.....	129	F	
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags.....	24	Fastening the Seatbelts.....	18
Driving Aids.....	129	Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	19
Driving at High Speed.....	204	First Aid Kit.....	149
Driving Hints.....	146	Flat Tire	
Driving Through Water.....	147	See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	199
DRL		Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	55	See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	187
E		Floor Mats.....	147
Economical Driving.....	146	Fog Lamps - Front	
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	280	See: Front Fog Lamps.....	56
End User License Agreement.....	282	Fog Lamps - Rear	
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE		See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	56
AGREEMENT (EULA)	282	Front Fog Lamps.....	56
Engine Coolant Check.....	168	Front Passenger Sensing System.....	21
Adding Coolant.....	169	Fuel and Refueling.....	97
Coolant Change.....	170	Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	98
Engine Coolant Temperature		Fuel Filter.....	173
Management.....	171	Fuel Quality.....	97
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	170	Long-Term Storage.....	98
Recycled Coolant.....	170	Fuel Shutoff.....	149
Severe Climates.....	170	Fuses.....	154
Engine Emission Control.....	103	Fuse Specification Chart.....	154
Engine Immobilizer		Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	159
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	43	Power Distribution Box.....	154
Engine Oil Check.....	167		
Adding Engine Oil.....	167	G	
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	167	Gauges.....	61
Entertainment.....	233	Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	62
AM/FM Radio.....	235	Fuel Gauge.....	61
Apps.....	237	Information Display.....	61
Bluetooth Stereo or USB.....	236	Gearbox	
CD.....	235	See: Transmission.....	104
Sources.....	234	General Information on Radio	
Supported Media Players, Formats and		Frequencies.....	29
Metadata Information.....	238	Glasses Holder.....	92
USB Port.....	237	Global Opening.....	58
Event Data Recording		Opening the Windows.....	59
See: Data Recording.....	7		
Exterior Mirrors.....	59		
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	59		

Index

H		
Handbrake		
See: Parking Brake.....	112	
Hazard Flashers.....	149	
Headlamp Adjusting		
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	176	
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	55	
Headlamp Leveling.....	57	
Headrest		
See: Head Restraints.....	84	
Head Restraints.....	84	
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	84	
Front Seat Non-Adjustable Head Restraints		
.....	84	
Tilting Head Restraints	85	
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	82	
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	82	
Heated Rear Window.....	82	
Heating		
See: Climate Control.....	79	
Hill Start Assist.....	112	
Switching the System On and Off.....	113	
Using Hill Start Assist.....	113	
Hints on Controlling the Interior		
Climate.....	81	
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold		
Weather.....	82	
General Hints.....	81	
Quickly Cooling the Interior.....	81	
Quickly Heating the Interior.....	81	
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	82	
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	81	
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock		
Brakes.....	111	
Home Screen.....	225	
Hood Lock		
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	164	
I		
Information Display Control.....	49	
Quick Action Menus.....	50	
Information Displays.....	66	
General Information.....	66	
Information Messages.....	69	
Airbag.....	69	
Alarm.....	70	
Battery and Charging System.....	70	
Doors and Locks.....	71	
Electronic Stability Control.....	71	
Engine.....	71	
Exhaust Mode.....	71	
Fuel.....	72	
Hill Start Assist.....	72	
Keys and Intelligent Access.....	72	
Maintenance.....	73	
MyKey.....	73	
Park Aid.....	74	
Park Brake.....	74	
Rear Axle.....	75	
Seats.....	75	
Starting System	75	
Steering System.....	76	
Suspension System.....	76	
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	76	
Traction Control.....	77	
Transmission.....	77	
Installing Child Restraints.....	13	
Instrument Cluster.....	61	
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	54	
Instrument Panel Overview.....	10	
Interior Lamps.....	57	
Interior Mirror.....	60	
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	60	
Introduction.....	5	
J		
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	149	
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	150	
Jump Starting.....	151	
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	150	
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	151	
K		
Keyless Entry.....	41	
Deactivated Passive Keys.....	42	
General Information.....	41	
Locking Your Vehicle.....	42	
Opening the Luggage Compartment.....	42	
Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys.....	42	
Unlocking Your Vehicle.....	41	
Keyless Starting.....	93	
Ignition Modes.....	93	

Index

Keys and Remote Controls.....	29

L

Lane Keeping System.....	130
Switching the System On and Off.....	131
Lighting Control.....	53
Headlamp Flasher.....	54
Headlamp High Beam.....	53
Lighting.....	53
General Information.....	53
Limited Slip Differential.....	110
Load Carrying.....	141
General Information.....	141
Locking and Unlocking.....	38
Autolock.....	39
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....	39
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	40
Opening the Luggage Compartment.....	40
Power Door Locks.....	38
Remote Control.....	38
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	199

M

Maintenance.....	164
General Information.....	164
Manual Seats.....	85
Manual Transmission.....	104
Parking Your Vehicle.....	105
Recommended Shift Speeds.....	104
Reverse.....	105
Using the Clutch.....	104
Memory Function.....	86
Linking a PreSet Position to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key Fob.....	87
Saving a PreSet Position.....	86
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	66
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	82
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	58
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	9
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	37

MyKey™.....	33
Principle of Operation.....	33

N

Navigation.....	247
Destination Mode.....	249
Map Mode.....	247
Navigation Map Updates.....	253
Navigation Menu.....	251
Waypoints.....	253

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset.....	167
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	167
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	164
Closing the Hood.....	165
Opening the Hood.....	164
Opening the Convertible Top.....	143
Using the Tonneau Caps.....	144

P

Parking Aids.....	118
Principle of Operation.....	118
Parking Brake.....	112
All Vehicles.....	112
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission.....	112
Vehicles with Manual Transmission.....	112
Passenger Airbag.....	21
.....	21
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	43
SecuriLock.....	43
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	43
Pedestrian Protection.....	27
Principle of Operation.....	27
Phone.....	242
During a Phone Call.....	245
Making Calls.....	244
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....	242
Phone Menu.....	243
Receiving Calls.....	245
Smartphone Connectivity.....	246

Index

Text Messaging.....	246
Post-Crash Alert System.....	152
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	38
Power Seats.....	85
Power Lumbar.....	86
Power Windows.....	58
Accessory Delay.....	58
Bounce-Back.....	58
One-Touch Down.....	58
One-Touch Up.....	58
Pre-Collision Assist.....	135
Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist	
Settings.....	137
Blocked Sensors.....	137
Distance Indication and Alert.....	136
Using the Pre-Collision Assist	
System.....	136
Protecting Larger Children.....	16
Typical Booster Seat.....	16
Puncture	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	199
R	
Rear Axle.....	110
Rear Fog Lamps.....	56
Rear Parking Aid.....	118
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	119
Rear Seats.....	87
Accessing the Rear Seats.....	87
Second Row Split-Folding Rear Seat	88
Rear View Camera.....	119
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	120
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	119
Reduced Engine Performance.....	146
Refueling.....	99
Refueling System Overview.....	99
Refueling System Warning.....	101
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	100
Remote Control.....	29
Car Finder.....	32
Passive Key.....	29
Replacing the Battery.....	31
Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	32
Using the Key Blade.....	30
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	185

Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	8
Collision Repairs.....	8
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical	
Repairs.....	8
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	9
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	32
Roadside Emergencies.....	149
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	146
Running Out of Fuel.....	98
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel	
Container.....	98
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	98

S

Safety Precautions.....	97
Seatbelt Reminder.....	19
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off.....	19
Seatbelts.....	17
Principle of Operation.....	17
Seats.....	83
Security.....	43
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	13
.....	13
Settings.....	255
Ambient Lighting.....	264
Bluetooth.....	256
Clock.....	256
Display.....	265
Emergency Assistance.....	259
General.....	263
Media Player.....	256
Mobile Apps.....	262
Navigation.....	260
Phone.....	257
Radio.....	260
Sound.....	255
Valet Mode.....	266
Vehicle.....	264
Voice Control.....	265
Wi-Fi.....	264
Side Airbags.....	24
Side Curtain Airbags - Coupe.....	25
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	83

Index

Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	194
Spare Wheel	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	199
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	123
Stability Control.....	115
Principle of Operation.....	115
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	94
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	95
Failure to Start.....	95
Fast Restart.....	95
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	96
Important Ventilating Information.....	96
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	96
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	96
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	93
General Information.....	93
Steering.....	134
Electric Power Steering.....	134
Steering Wheel Lock.....	94
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	94
Steering Wheel.....	48
Storage Compartments.....	92
Sun Visors.....	60
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	60
Supplementary Restraints System.....	20
Principle of Operation.....	20
Symbols Glossary.....	5
SYNC™ 3.....	214
General Information.....	214
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	266
T	
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	206
Tire Care.....	193
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	187
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	195
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	196
Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	196
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....	199
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System	197
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	187
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	187
First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air.....	189
General Information.....	188
Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.....	191
Tips for Use of the Kit.....	188
What to Do After the Tire has Been Sealed.....	191
What to do When a Tire Is Punctured.....	189
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	187
Towing a Trailer.....	142
Towing Points.....	152
Installing the Recovery Hook.....	152
Recovery Hook Location.....	152
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	142
Emergency Towing.....	142
Recreational Towing.....	142
Towing.....	142
Track Use.....	181
.....	181
Traction Control.....	114
Principle of Operation.....	114
Transmission.....	104
Transporting the Vehicle.....	152
Type Approvals.....	308
Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Blind Spot Information System.....	315
Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Mid Range Radar.....	310
Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Passive Anti-Theft System.....	311
Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Radio Transceiver Module.....	313
Radio Frequency Certification Logos for SYNC 3.....	316
Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s).....	308
Radio Frequency Certification Logos for Wireless Charging.....	316

Index

U

Under Hood Overview - 2.3L	
EcoBoost™	165
Under Hood Overview - 5.0L	166
USB Port	213
Using Adaptive Cruise Control	123
Automatic Cancellation	126
Blocked Sensor	127
Canceling the Set Speed	126
Changing the Set Speed	126
Detection Issues	126
Following a Vehicle	124
Hilly Condition Usage	126
Overriding the Set Speed	125
Resuming the Set Speed	126
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed	124
Setting the Gap Distance	125
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control	
Off	126
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control	
On	123
Switching to Normal Cruise Control	128
System Not Available	127
Using MyKey With Remote Start	
Systems	37
Using Snow Chains	194
Using Stability Control	116
Electronic Stability Control	116
Using Summer Tires	194
Using Traction Control	114
Switching the System Off	114
System Indicator Lights and	
Messages	114
Using Voice Recognition	227
Audio Voice Commands	227
Climate Voice Commands	228
Mobile App Voice Commands	231
Navigation Voice Commands	230
Phone Voice Commands	229
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice	
Commands	232
Voice Settings Commands	232

V

Vehicle Care	182
Vehicle Dimensions - Convertible	206

Vehicle Dimensions - Coupe	207
Vehicle Identification Number	208
Vehicle Identification Plate	208
Built Date	208
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control	79
Vents	
See: Air Vents	79
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number	208
Voice Control	49

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators	63
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator	63
Airbag Warning Lamp	63
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning	
Lamp	63
Automatic Headlamp High Beam	
Indicator	63
Battery	63
Brake System Warning Lamp	63
Cruise Control Indicator	63
Direction Indicator	64
Door Ajar Warning Lamp	64
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning	
Lamp	64
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp	64
Front Fog Lamp Indicator	64
Headlamp High Beam Indicator	64
Hood Ajar	64
Launch Control	64
Low Beam Malfunction	64
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp	64
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp	64
Low Washer Fluid Level Warning	
Lamp	64
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp	64
Parking Lamps	65
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator	65
Service Engine Soon	65
Stability Control and Traction Control	
Indicator	65
Stability Control and Traction Control Off	
Warning Lamp	65
Trunk Ajar	65
Warning Triangle	149

Index

Washer Fluid Check.....	173
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	182
See: Wipers and Washers.....	51
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	199
Wheels and Tires.....	187
Technical Specifications.....	205
Windows and Mirrors.....	58
Windshield Washers.....	52
Windshield Wipers.....	51
Intermittent Wipe.....	51
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	51
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	175
Wipers and Washers.....	51